



## Usage Guideline

# HSBC\_camt.053.001.02\_BankToCustomer-Statement\_Core

## HSBC\_camt.053.001.02\_BankToCustomerStatement\_Core

This document describes a usage guideline restricting the base message **MX camt.053.001.02**. You can also consult [this information online](#).

Published by HSBC Direct Channels and generated by [MyStandards](#).

01 June 2022

# Table of Contents

**Message Functionality** ..... 3

**1    Restriction summary** ..... 4

**2    Structure** ..... 5

**3    Message Building Blocks** ..... 6

**4    Message Components** ..... 8

**5    Message Datatypes** ..... 193

**Legal Notices** ..... 246

## Message Functionality

### Overview

The Bank-to-Customer Statement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

### Outline

The HSBC\_camt.053.001.02\_BankToCustomerStatement\_Core / HSBC\_camt.053.001.02\_BankTo-CustomerStatement\_Core message is composed of 2 building blocks

a. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

b. Statement







Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.













# 1 Restriction summary

This Usage Guideline restricts the camt.053.001.02 message.

Restriction Type	See page
Removed elements	8, 13, 14, 14, 15, 16, 18, 21, 21, 22, 24, 28, 28, 30, 37, 37, 40, 40, 41, 41, 41, 41, 43, 43, 44, 48, 51, 52, 53, 54, 54, 55, 60, 65, 66, 66, 67, 75, 77, 80, 81, 81, 82, 82, 83, 84, 84, 85, 87, 87, 87, 89, 89, 89, 89, 92, 93, 93, 93, 93, 93, 98, 99, 112, 112, 113, 113, 113, 113, 113, 113, 113, 114, 114, 114, 114, 118, 118, 118, 119, 119, 119, 119, 119, 119, 120, 120, 120, 120, 120, 120, 121, 121, 121, 141, 142, 142, 143, 144, 144, 145, 148, 148, 149, 167, 168, 172, 173, 173, 174, 174, 175, 175, 176, 181, 185, 185, 192, 197, 197, 197, 198, 198, 198, 217, 217, 217, 217, 218, 221, 221
Make mandatory	12, 13, 16, 30, 30, 33, 34, 34, 35, 35, 43, 44, 72, 74, 86, 99, 105, 105, 105, 105, 110, 111, 111, 111, 123, 123, 134, 137, 138, 139, 140, 140, 145, 149, 167, 167, 189, 190
Reduce Multiplicity	n.a.
Ignore	n.a.
Text rules	19, 20, 40, 71, 72, 75, 123, 123, 123, 123, 138, 140, 145, 188, 189, 190, 190, 191, 191
Conditional rules	34, 34, 189
Formal rules	n.a.
Fixed values	n.a.
Truncates	n.a.
Comments	31, 32, 33, 33, 61, 61, 62, 134, 135, 141, 153
Annotations	n.a.
Changed datatypes	n.a.
Extensions	n.a.
Synonyms	n.a.

## 2 Structure

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
	<i>BankToCustomerStatementV02</i>	<i>&lt;BkToCstmrStmt&gt;</i>		[1..1]		
1.0	<b>GroupHeader</b>	<i>&lt;GrpHdr&gt;</i>		[1..1]		6
1.1	MessageIdentification	<i>&lt;MsgId&gt;</i>		[1..1]		97
1.2	CreationDateTime	<i>&lt;CreDtTm&gt;</i>		[1..1]		97
1.3	MessageRecipient	<i>&lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</i>		[0..1]		98
1.4	MessagePagination	<i>&lt;MsgPgntn&gt;</i>		[0..1]		98
1.5	AdditionalInformation	<i>&lt;AddtlInf&gt;</i>		[0..1]		99
2.0	<b>Statement</b>	<i>&lt;Stmt&gt;</i>		[1..*]		6
2.1	Identification	<i>&lt;Id&gt;</i>		[1..1]		12
2.2	ElectronicSequenceNumber	<i>&lt;ElctrncSeqNb&gt;</i>		[0..1]		12
2.3	LegalSequenceNumber	<i>&lt;LglSeqNb&gt;</i>		[0..1]		12
2.4	CreationDateTime	<i>&lt;CreDtTm&gt;</i>		[1..1]		13
2.5	FromToDate	<i>&lt;FrToDt&gt;</i>		[0..1]		13
2.6	CopyDuplicateIndicator	<i>&lt;CpyDplctInd&gt;</i>		[0..1]		13
2.7	ReportingSource	<i>&lt;RptgSrc&gt;</i>		[0..1]		14
2.10	Account	<i>&lt;Acct&gt;</i>		[1..1]		14
2.11	RelatedAccount	<i>&lt;RltdAcct&gt;</i>		[0..1]		15
2.12	Interest	<i>&lt;Intrst&gt;</i>		[0..*]		15
2.23	Balance	<i>&lt;Bal&gt;</i>		[1..*]		16
2.43	TransactionsSummary	<i>&lt;Txsumry&gt;</i>		[0..1]		16
2.76	Entry	<i>&lt;Ntry&gt;</i>		[0..*]		17
2.315	AdditionalStatementInformation	<i>&lt;AddtlStmtInf&gt;</i>		[0..1]		17

### 3 Message Building Blocks

**Note** The following chapter identifies the building blocks of the HSBC\_camt.053.001.02\_BankToCustomerStatement\_Core / HSBC\_camt.053.001.02\_BankToCustomerStatement\_Core message definition.

#### 3.1 GroupHeader

*XML Tag:* GrpHdr

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

The **GrpHdr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "GroupHeader42" on page 97 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ♦ Ignored - ♦ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[1..1]		97
1.2	CreationDateTime	<CreDtTm>		[1..1]		97
1.3	MessageRecipient	<MsgRcpt>		[0..1]	⊘	98
1.4	MessagePagination	<MsgPgntn>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	98
1.5	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..1]	⊘	99

#### 3.2 Statement

*XML Tag:* Stmt

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

The **Stmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AccountStatement2" on page 11 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ♦ Ignored - ♦ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		12
2.2	ElectronicSequenceNumber	<ElctrncSeqNb>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	12
2.3	LegalSequenceNumber	<LglSeqNb>		[0..1]	⊘	12
2.4	CreationDateTime	<CreDtTm>		[1..1]		13
2.5	FromToDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	13

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.6	CopyDuplicateIndicator	<CpyDplctInd>		[0..1]	⊘	13
2.7	ReportingSource	<RptgSrc>		[0..1]	⊘	14
2.10	Account	<Acct>		[1..1]		14
2.11	RelatedAccount	<RltdAcct>		[0..1]	⊘	15
2.12	Interest	<Intrst>		[0..*]	⊘	15
2.23	Balance	<Bal>		[1..*]		16
2.43	TransactionsSummary	<Txssummry>		[0..1]	M	16
2.76	Entry	<Ntry>		[0..*]		17
2.315	AdditionalStatementInformation	<AddtlStmntInf>		[0..1]	⊘	17

## 4 Message Components

**Note** The following chapter identifies the message components.

### 4.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.1 , 1.1.1	IBAN	<IBAN>	{Or	[1..1]	🚫	8
1.2.2 , 1.1.2	Other	<Othr>	Or}	[1..1]		8

🚫 , ⬜ >> Note as not all **AccountIdentification4Choice** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

**Used in element(s)**

"Identification" on page 39, "Identification" on page 42

#### 4.1.1 IBAN

*XML Tag:* IBAN

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Datatype:* "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 232

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Identification/IBAN) is removed.

#### 4.1.2 Other

*XML Tag:* Othr

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.



The **Othr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 91 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.3 , 1.1.3	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		92
1.2.4 , 1.1.4	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]	🚫	92
1.2.7 , 1.1.7	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]	🚫	93

🚫 , ⬜ >> Note as not all **Othr** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## 4.2 AccountInterest2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the interest that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.13	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		9
2.16	Rate	<Rate>		[0..*]		10
2.21	FromToDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		10
2.22	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		10

**Used in element(s)**

"Interest" on page 15

### 4.2.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[InterestType1Choice](#)" on page 101 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.14 , 2.126 , 2.190	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		101
2.15 , 2.127 , 2.191	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		101







## 4.2.2 Rate

XML Tag: Rate

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

The **Rate** block contains the following elements (see datatype "Rate3" on page 128 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.17 , 2.129 , 2.193	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		128
2.20 , 2.132 , 2.196	ValidityRange	<VldtyRg>		[0..1]		129







## 4.2.3 FromToDate

XML Tag: FrToDt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

The **FrToDt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "DateTimePeriodDetails" on page 68 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
5.1.0	FromDateTime	<FrDtTm>		[1..1]		69
5.1.1	ToDateTime	<ToDtTm>		[1..1]		69

## 4.2.4 Reason

XML Tag: Rsn

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the interest.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.3 AccountSchemeName1Choice

*Definition:* Sets of elements to identify a name of the identification scheme.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.5 , 1.1.5	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		11
1.2.6 , 1.1.6	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		11

Used in element(s)

"SchemeName" on page 92

### 4.3.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 222

### 4.3.2 Proprietary

XML Tag: Prtry

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.







Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.4 AccountStatement2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the account statement.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		12
2.2	ElectronicSequenceNumber	<ElctrncSeqNb>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	12
2.3	LegalSequenceNumber	<LglSeqNb>		[0..1]	🚫	12
2.4	CreationDateTime	<CreDtTm>		[1..1]		13
2.5	FromToDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	13

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.6	CopyDuplicateIndicator	<CpyDplctInd>		[0..1]		13
2.7	ReportingSource	<RptgSrc>		[0..1]		14
2.10	Account	<Acct>		[1..1]		14
2.11	RelatedAccount	<RltdAcct>		[0..1]		15
2.12	Interest	<Intrst>		[0..*]		15
2.23	Balance	<Bal>		[1..*]		16
2.43	TransactionsSummary	<Txssummry>		[0..1]		16
2.76	Entry	<Ntry>		[0..*]		17
2.315	AdditionalStatementInformation	<AddtlStmntInf>		[0..1]		17

**Used in element(s)**

"Statement" on page 6

## 4.4.1 Identification

XML Tag: Id

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account statement.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.4.2 ElectronicSequenceNumber

XML Tag: ElctrncSeqNb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each statement sent electronically.

Datatype: "Number" on page 240

**Usage Guideline details**

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/ElectronicSequenceNumber

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.4.3 LegalSequenceNumber

XML Tag: LglSeqNb

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each statement sent.

*Usage:* Where a paper statement is a legal requirement, it may have a number different from the electronic sequential number. Paper statements could for instance only be sent if movement on the account has taken place, whereas electronic statements could be sent at the end of each reporting period, regardless of whether movements have taken place or not.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 240

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/LegalSequenceNumber**) is removed.

## 4.4.4 CreationDateTime

*XML Tag:* CreDtTm

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 233







## 4.4.5 FromToDate

*XML Tag:* FrToDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account statement is issued.

The **FrToDt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[DateTimePeriodDetails](#)" on page 68 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
5.1.0	FromDateTime	<FrDtTm>		[1..1]		69
5.1.1	ToDateTime	<ToDtTm>		[1..1]		69

#### Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/FromToDate**

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.4.6 CopyDuplicateIndicator

*XML Tag:* CpyDplctInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 214

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/CopyDuplicateIndicator) is removed.

## 4.4.7 ReportingSource

*XML Tag:* RptgSrc

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

The **RptgSrc** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ReportingSource1Choice" on page 146 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.8	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		146
2.9	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		146

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/ReportingSource) is removed.

## 4.4.8 Account

*XML Tag:* Acct

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

The **Acct** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CashAccount20" on page 41 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		42
1.2.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]	🚫	42
1.2.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	43
1.2.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]	🚫	43
1.2.13	Owner	<Ownr>		[0..1]	🚫	43

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.56	Servicer	<Svcr>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	44






## 4.4.9 RelatedAccount

*XML Tag:* RltdAcct

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the statement has been issued.

The **RltdAcct** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CashAccount16" on page 39 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
 **M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		39
1.1.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		40
1.1.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]		41
1.1.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		41

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/RelatedAccount) is removed.






## 4.4.10 Interest

*XML Tag:* Intrst

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

The **Intrst** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AccountInterest2" on page 9 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
 **M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.13	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		9
2.16	Rate	<Rate>		[0..*]		10
2.21	FromDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		10
2.22	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		10

## Usage Guideline details

- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/Interest**) is removed.







## 4.4.11 Balance


*XML Tag:* Bal

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

The **Bal** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CashBalance3" on page 45 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.24	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		46
2.31	CreditLine	<CdtLine>		[0..1]		46
2.34	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		47
2.35	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		47
2.36	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		47
2.37	Availability	<Avlbt>		[0..*]		47







## 4.4.12 TransactionsSummary





*XML Tag:* TxSummary

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide summary information on entries.

The **TxsSummary** block contains the following elements (see datatype "TotalTransactions2" on page 166 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.44	TotalEntries	<TtlNtries>		[0..1]		166
2.49	TotalCreditEntries	<TtlCdtNtries>		[0..1]		167
2.52	TotalDebitEntries	<TtlDbtNtries>		[0..1]		167
2.55	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode	<TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>		[0..*]		168

## Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary**



*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.4.13 Entry







XML Tag: Ntry


















Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Set of elements used to specify an entry in the statement.

Usage: At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

The **Ntry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ReportEntry2" on page 136 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.77	EntryReference	<NtryRef>		[0..1]	 	137
2.78	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		138
2.79	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		138
2.80	ReversalIndicator	<RvslInd>		[0..1]		138
2.81	Status	<Sts>		[1..1]		138
2.82	BookingDate	<BookgDt>		[0..1]		139
2.83	ValueDate	<ValDt>		[0..1]		139
2.84	AccountServicerReference	<AcctSvcrRef>		[0..1]	 	140
2.85	Availability	<Avlbty>		[0..*]		140
2.91	BankTransactionCode	<BkTxCd>		[1..1]		141
2.100	CommissionWaiverIndicator	<ComssnWvrInd>		[0..1]		141
2.101	AdditionalInformationIndicator	<AddtlInfInd>		[0..1]		142
2.104	AmountDetails	<AmtDtls>		[0..1]		142
2.105	Charges	<Chrgs>		[0..*]		143
2.119	TechnicalInputChannel	<TechInptChanl>		[0..1]		144
2.122	Interest	<Intrst>		[0..*]		144
2.135	EntryDetails	<NtryDtls>		[0..*]		145
2.314	AdditionalEntryInformation	<AddtlNtryInf>		[0..1]		145

## 4.4.14 AdditionalStatementInformation

XML Tag: AddtlStmntInf

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account statement.







*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 238

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/AdditionalStatementInformation](#)) is removed.

## 4.5 AlternateSecurityIdentification2

*Definition:* Proprietary or domestic identification scheme that uniquely identifies a security.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.290	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		18
2.291	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		18

#### Used in element(s)

"Proprietary" on page 150

### 4.5.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of financial instrument identifier type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.5.2 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id







*Presence:* [1..1]


*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier of a security.





*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237



## 4.6 AmountAndCurrencyExchange3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.0	InstructedAmount	<InstdAmt>		[0..1]		19

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.9	TransactionAmount	<TxAmt>		[0..1]		20
2.1.18	CounterValueAmount	<CntrValAmt>		[0..1]		20
2.1.27	AnnouncedPostingAmount	<AnncdPstngAmt>		[0..1]		21
2.1.36	ProprietaryAmount	<PrtryAmt>		[0..*]		21

 ,  >> Note as not all **AmountAndCurrencyExchange3** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Used in element(s)

"AmountDetails" on page 74, "AmountDetails" on page 142







## 4.6.1 InstructedAmount

XML Tag: InstdAmt

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Identifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party and provides currency exchange information in case the instructed amount and/or currency is/are different from the entry amount and/or currency.

The **InstdAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3" on page 22 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.1 , 2.1.10 , 2.1.19 , 2.1.28	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		22
2.1.2 , 2.1.11 , 2.1.20 , 2.1.29	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]		23

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/InstructedAmount

#### – HSBC\_InstructedAmount:

Instructed Amount will be reported for LHCOS and itemised statement entry







## 4.6.2 TransactionAmount


*XML Tag:* TxAmt



*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of the underlying transaction.

The **TxAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3" on page 22 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.1 , 2.1.10 , 2.1.19 , 2.1.28	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		22
2.1.2 , 2.1.11 , 2.1.20 , 2.1.29	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]		23

 ,  >> Note as not all **TxAmt** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/TransactionAmount

#### – HSBC\_TransactionAmount:

Transaction Amount will be reported for COS (Cheque Outsourcing Payments) and itemised statement entry

## 4.6.3 CounterValueAmount







*XML Tag:* CntrValAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the countervalue amount and currency exchange information.

*Usage:* This can be either the counter amount quoted in an FX deal, or the result of the currency information applied to an instructed amount, before deduction of charges.

The **CntrValAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3" on page 22 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.1 , 2.1.10 , 2.1.19 , 2.1.28	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		22
2.1.2 , 2.1.11 , 2.1.20 , 2.1.29	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]		23

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/CounterValueAmount) is removed.

## 4.6.4 AnnouncedPostingAmount







XML Tag: AnncdPstngAmt

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, based on terms of corporate action event and balance of underlying securities, entitled to/from the account owner.

In some situations, this amount may alternatively be called entitled amount.

The **AnncdPstngAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3" on page 22 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.1 , 2.1.10 , 2.1.19 , 2.1.28	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		22
2.1.2 , 2.1.11 , 2.1.20 , 2.1.29	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]		23

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/AnnouncedPostingAmount) is removed.

## 4.6.5 ProprietaryAmount

XML Tag: PrtryAmt

Presence: [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount and currency exchange.

The **PrtryAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails4](#)" on page 24 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.37	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		24
2.1.38	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		24
2.1.39	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]		24

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/ProprietaryAmount](#)) is removed.

## 4.7 AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount and currency exchange.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.1 , 2.1.10 , 2.1.19 , 2.1.28	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		22
2.1.2 , 2.1.11 , 2.1.20 , 2.1.29	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]	🚫	23

🚫 , ⬜ >> Note as not all **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Used in element(s)

"[AnnouncedPostingAmount](#)" on page 21, "[CounterValueAmount](#)" on page 20, "[InstructedAmount](#)" on page 19, "[TransactionAmount](#)" on page 20

### 4.7.1 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193







## 4.7.2 CurrencyExchange


*XML Tag:* CcyXchg



*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

The **CcyXchg** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CurrencyExchange5" on page 64 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.3 , 2.1.12 , 2.1.21 , 2.1.30 , 2.1.40	SourceCurrency	<SrcCcy>		[1..1]		65
2.1.4 , 2.1.13 , 2.1.22 , 2.1.31 , 2.1.41	TargetCurrency	<TrgtCcy>		[0..1]		65
2.1.5 , 2.1.14 , 2.1.23 , 2.1.32 , 2.1.42	UnitCurrency	<UnitCcy>		[0..1]		65
2.1.6 , 2.1.15 , 2.1.24 , 2.1.33 , 2.1.43	ExchangeRate	<XchgRate>		[1..1]		65
2.1.7 , 2.1.16 , 2.1.25 , 2.1.34 , 2.1.44	ContractIdentification	<CtrctId>		[0..1]		65
2.1.8 , 2.1.17 , 2.1.26 , 2.1.35 , 2.1.45	QuotationDate	<QtnDt>		[0..1]		66







 ,  >> Note as not all **CcyXchg** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/TransactionAmount/CurrencyExchange](#)) is removed.

## 4.8 AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails4

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount and currency exchange.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.37	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		24
2.1.38	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		24
2.1.39	CurrencyExchange	<CcyXchg>		[0..1]		24

Used in element(s)

["ProprietaryAmount" on page 21](#)

### 4.8.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of amount.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.8.2 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be exchanged against another amount of money in the counter currency.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)







### 4.8.3 CurrencyExchange

*XML Tag:* CcyXchg

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

The **CcyXchg** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["CurrencyExchange5" on page 64](#) for details)







 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.3 , 2.1.12 , 2.1.21 , 2.1.30 , 2.1.40	SourceCurrency	<SrcCcy>		[1..1]		65
2.1.4 , 2.1.13 , 2.1.22 , 2.1.31 , 2.1.41	TargetCurrency	<TrgtCcy>		[0..1]		65
2.1.5 , 2.1.14 , 2.1.23 , 2.1.32 , 2.1.42	UnitCurrency	<UnitCcy>		[0..1]		65
2.1.6 , 2.1.15 , 2.1.24 , 2.1.33 , 2.1.43	ExchangeRate	<XchgRate>		[1..1]		65
2.1.7 , 2.1.16 , 2.1.25 , 2.1.34 , 2.1.44	ContractIdentification	<CtrctId>		[0..1]		65
2.1.8 , 2.1.17 , 2.1.26 , 2.1.35 , 2.1.45	QuotationDate	<QtnDt>		[0..1]		66

## 4.9 AmountRangeBoundary1

*Definition:* Limit for an amount range.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.2 , 3.1.5 , 3.1.9 , 3.1.12	BoundaryAmount	<BdryAmt>		[1..1]		26
3.1.3 , 3.1.6 , 3.1.10 , 3.1.13	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		26

**Used in element(s)**

"FromAmount" on page 91, "FromAmount" on page 99, "ToAmount" on page 91, "ToAmount" on page 100

## 4.9.1 BoundaryAmount

*XML Tag:* BdryAmt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount value of the range limit.

*Datatype:* ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 234](#)

## 4.9.2 Included

*XML Tag:* Incl







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the boundary amount is included in the range of amount values.

*Datatype:* ["YesNoIndicator" on page 245](#)

## 4.10 BalanceSubType1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the balance subtype.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.29	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		26
2.30	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		26

**Used in element(s)**

["SubType" on page 27](#)

### 4.10.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBalanceSubType1Code" on page 223](#)

### 4.10.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a proprietary code for the balance type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.11 BalanceType12

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance type and sub-type.

Removed - Partial Removed - Ignored - Partial Ignored - Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.25	CodeOrProprietary	<CdOrPrtry>		[1..1]		27
2.28	SubType	<SubTp>		[0..1]		27

Used in element(s)

"Type" on page 46

## 4.11.1 CodeOrProprietary

XML Tag: CdOrPrtry

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format balance type.

The **CdOrPrtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BalanceType5Choice](#)" on page 28 for details)

Removed - Partial Removed - Ignored - Partial Ignored - Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.26	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		28
2.27	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		28

, >> Note as not all **CdOrPrtry** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## 4.11.2 SubType

XML Tag: SubTp

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the balance sub-type.

The **SubTp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BalanceSubType1Choice](#)" on page 26 for details)

Removed - Partial Removed - Ignored - Partial Ignored - Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.29	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		26
2.30	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		26


## Usage Guideline details



- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/SubType](#)) is removed.

## 4.12 BalanceType5Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the balance type.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.26	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		28
2.27	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		28

 , 
  >> Note as not all **BalanceType5Choice** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

### Used in element(s)

"CodeOrProprietary" on page 27

### 4.12.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["BalanceType12Code"](#) on page 196

### 4.12.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 237

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Proprietary](#)) is removed.

## 4.13 BankTransactionCodeStructure4

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Removed - Partial Removed - Ignored - Partial Ignored - Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.62 , 2.92 , 2.164 , 2.295	Domain	<Domn>		[0..1]		29
2.67 , 2.97 , 2.169 , 2.300	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		30

, >> Note as not all **BankTransactionCodeStructure4** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## Rules

### R6 DomainOrProprietaryRule ✓

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00104
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for bank transaction code.

### R7 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

Error handling: Undefined

## Used in element(s)

["BankTransactionCode" on page 170](#), ["BankTransactionCode" on page 75](#), ["BankTransaction-Code" on page 141](#), ["OriginalBankTransactionCode" on page 147](#)

## 4.13.1 Domain







*XML Tag:* Domn


*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the domain, the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, in a structured and hierarchical format.

*Usage:* If a specific family or sub-family code cannot be provided, the generic family code defined for the domain or the generic sub-family code defined for the family should be provided.

The **Domn** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["BankTransactionCodeStructure5" on page 31](#) for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.63 , 2.93 , 2.165 , 2.296	Code	<Cd>		[1..1]		31
2.64 , 2.94 , 2.166 , 2.297	Family	<Fmly>		[1..1]		31

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/BankTransactionCode/Domain) is removed.







## 4.13.2 Proprietary




XML Tag: Prtry

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Bank transaction code in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ProprietaryBankTransactionCodeStructure1" on page 122 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.68 , 2.98 , 2.170 , 2.301	Code	<Cd>		[1..1]		122
2.69 , 2.99 , 2.171 , 2.302	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]	 	123


#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Proprietary  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/BankTransactionCode/Proprietary  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.14 BankTransactionCodeStructure5

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.63 , 2.93 , 2.165 , 2.296	Code	<Cd>		[1..1]		31
2.64 , 2.94 , 2.166 , 2.297	Family	<Fmly>		[1..1]		31

Used in element(s)

"Domain" on page 29

### 4.14.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the business area of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code" on page 224

Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Domain/Code

**Comment:**

This field will be populated with the ISO Code. For a detailed list please refer to your Integration Manager.







### 4.14.2 Family



*XML Tag:* Fmly

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, within a specific domain, in a structured and hierarchical format.







The **Fmly** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BankTransactionCodeStructure6" on page 32 for details)



 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.65 , 2.95 , 2.167 , 2.298	Code	<Cd>		[1..1]		32
2.66 , 2.96 , 2.168 , 2.299	SubFamilyCode	<SubFmlyCd>		[1..1]		32

## 4.15 BankTransactionCodeStructure6

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.65 , 2.95 , 2.167 , 2.298	Code	<Cd>		[1..1]		32
2.66 , 2.96 , 2.168 , 2.299	SubFamilyCode	<SubFmlyCd>		[1..1]		32

Used in element(s)

"Family" on page 31

### 4.15.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the family within a domain.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code" on page 225

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Domain/Family/Code

**Comment:**

This field will be populated with the ISO Code. For a detailed list please refer to your Integration Manager.

### 4.15.2 SubFamilyCode

*XML Tag:* SubFmlyCd

*Presence:* [1..1]



*Definition:* Specifies the sub-product family within a specific family.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code" on page 225

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Domain/Family/SubFamilyCode

**Comment:**

This field will be populated with the ISO Code. For a detailed list please refer to your Integration Manager.

## 4.16 BatchInformation2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the underlying batches.

⊗ Removed - !⊗ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - !◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.137	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[0..1]	<b>M</b> ⚠	33
2.138	PaymentInformationIdentification	<PmtInfId>		[0..1]	<b>M</b> ⚠	34
2.139	NumberOfTransactions	<NbOfTx>		[0..1]	<b>M</b> ⚠	34
2.140	TotalAmount	<TtlAmt>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	35
2.141	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	35

#### Used in element(s)

"Batch" on page 70

### 4.16.1 MessageIdentification

*XML Tag:* MsgId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the sending party, to unambiguously identify the batch of transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/MessageIdentification

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/MessageIdentification

**Comment:**

Internal reference generated by HSBC for the Batch.

## 4.16.2 PaymentInformationIdentification

XML Tag: PmtInfId

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/PaymentInformationIdentification

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/PaymentInformationIdentification

#### – HSBC\_PaymentInformationIdentification:

Payment information ID for all the countries supporting the de-batch functionality.

Countries where the de-batch functionality is not supported this field will not be reported.

#### **If**

countries support de-batch functionality

#### **Then**

Payment Information Identification will be reported

#### **Else**

Payment Information Identification will not be reported

## 4.16.3 NumberOfTransactions

XML Tag: NbOfTx

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual transactions included in the batch.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 236

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/NumberOfTransactions

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/NumberOfTransactions

#### – HSBC\_NumberOfTransactions:

Reports the Number of transactions in the batch for all the countries supporting the de-batch functionality.

Countries where the de-batch functionality is not supported this field will not be reported

#### **If**

countries support de-batch functionality

**Then**  
Number of Transactions will be reported

**Else**  
Number of Transactions will not be reported

## 4.16.4 TotalAmount

*XML Tag:* TtlAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money reported in the batch entry.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/TotalAmount  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.16.5 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the batch entry is a credit or a debit entry.







*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216


### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch/CreditDebitIndicator  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.17 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4

*Definition:* Set of elements used to uniquely and unambiguously identify a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

**Used in element(s)**

"Agent" on page 122, "CreditorAgent" on page 171, "DebtorAgent" on page 171, "DeliveringAgent" on page 174, "IntermediaryAgent1" on page 172, "IntermediaryAgent2" on page 172, "IntermediaryAgent3" on page 173, "IssuingAgent" on page 174, "Party" on page 54, "ReceivingAgent" on page 173, "Servicer" on page 44, "SettlementPlace" on page 175







## 4.17.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification






*XML Tag:* FinInstnId



*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

The **FinInstnId** block contains the following elements (see datatype "FinancialInstitutionIdentification7" on page 85 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.58 , 6.1.1	BIC	<BIC>		[0..1]		86
1.2.59 , 6.1.2	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification	<ClrSysMmbld>		[0..1]		86
1.2.64 , 6.1.7	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		87
1.2.65 , 6.1.8	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		87
1.2.76 , 6.1.19	Other	<Othr>		[0..1]		89

 ,  >> Note as not all **FinInstnId** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## 4.17.2 BranchIdentification







*XML Tag:* BrnchId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

The **BrnchId** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BranchData2" on page 37 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.83 , 6.1.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		37
1.2.84 , 6.1.27	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		37
1.2.85 , 6.1.28	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		38

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Service/BranchIdentification](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/CreditorAgent/BranchIdentification](#)) is removed.

## 4.18 BranchData2

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.83 , 6.1.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		37
1.2.84 , 6.1.27	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		37
1.2.85 , 6.1.28	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		38

#### Used in element(s)

["BranchIdentification" on page 36](#)

### 4.18.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.18.2 Name

*XML Tag:* Nm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 235







## 4.18.3 PostalAddress

XML Tag: PstlAdr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

The **PstlAdr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PostalAddress6" on page 116 for details)







 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]





Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.2 , 1.2.16 , 1.2.66 , 1.2.86 , 6.1.9 , 6.1.29 , 10.1.0	AddressType	<AdrTp>		[0..1]		118
9.1.3 , 1.2.17 , 1.2.67 , 1.2.87 , 6.1.10 , 6.1.30 , 10.1.1	Department	<Dept>		[0..1]		118
9.1.4 , 1.2.18 , 1.2.68 , 1.2.88 , 6.1.11 , 6.1.31 , 10.1.2	SubDepartment	<SubDept>		[0..1]		119
9.1.5 , 1.2.19 , 1.2.69 , 1.2.89 , 6.1.12 , 6.1.32 , 10.1.3	StreetName	<StrtNm>		[0..1]		119
9.1.6 , 1.2.20 , 1.2.70 , 1.2.90 , 6.1.13 , 6.1.33 , 10.1.4	BuildingNumber	<BldgNb>		[0..1]		119
9.1.7 , 1.2.21 , 1.2.71 , 1.2.91 , 6.1.14 , 6.1.34 , 10.1.5	PostCode	<PstCd>		[0..1]		120

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.8 , 1.2.22 , 1.2.72 , 1.2.92 , 6.1.15 , 6.1.35 , 10.1.6	TownName	<TwnNm>		[0..1]		120
9.1.9 , 1.2.23 , 1.2.73 , 1.2.93 , 6.1.16 , 6.1.36 , 10.1.7	CountrySubDivision	<CtrySubDvsn>		[0..1]		120
9.1.10 , 1.2.24 , 1.2.74 , 1.2.94 , 6.1.17 , 6.1.37 , 10.1.8	Country	<Ctry>		[0..1]		121
9.1.11 , 1.2.25 , 1.2.75 , 1.2.95 , 6.1.18 , 6.1.38 , 10.1.9	AddressLine	<AdrLine>		[0..7]		121

## 4.19 CashAccount16

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify an account.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		39
1.1.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		40
1.1.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]		41
1.1.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		41

**Used in element(s)**

"CreditorAccount" on page 183, "DebtorAccount" on page 182, "RelatedAccount" on page 15,  
"SafekeepingAccount" on page 84







### 4.19.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

The **Id** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on [page 8](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.1 , 1.1.1	IBAN	<IBAN>	{Or	[1..1]		8
1.2.2 , 1.1.2	Other	<Othr>	Or}	[1..1]		8

#### Usage Guideline details

- on [camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/CreditorAccount/Identification](#)
  - **HSBC\_Identification:**  
`Other.Identification` is mandatory







## 4.19.2 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CashAccountType2](#)" on [page 45](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.9 , 1.1.9	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		45
1.2.10 , 1.1.10	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		45

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/CreditorAccount/Type](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/DebtorAccount/Type](#)) is removed.



## 4.19.3 Currency

*XML Tag:* Ccy

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

*Usage:* Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/CreditorAccount/Currency**) is removed.
- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/DebtorAccount/Currency**) is removed.

## 4.19.4 Name

*XML Tag:* Nm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.







*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 239






### Usage Guideline details

- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/CreditorAccount/Name**) is removed.
- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/DebtorAccount/Name**) is removed.

## 4.20 CashAccount20

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify an account.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		42
1.2.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		42
1.2.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]		43
1.2.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		43
1.2.13	Owner	<Ownr>		[0..1]		43
1.2.56	Servicer	<Svcr>		[0..1]		44

**Used in element(s)**

"Account" on page 14







## 4.20.1 Identification


XML Tag: Id



Presence: [1..1]

**Definition:** Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

The **Id** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 8 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.1 , 1.1.1	IBAN	<IBAN>	{Or	[1..1]		8
1.2.2 , 1.1.2	Other	<Othr>	Or}	[1..1]		8

 ,  >> Note as not all **Id** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.







## 4.20.2 Type

XML Tag: Tp

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CashAccountType2](#)" on page 45 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.9 , 1.1.9	Code	<Cd>	{Or}	[1..1]		45
1.2.10 , 1.1.10	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		45

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Type](#)) is removed.

## 4.20.3 Currency

*XML Tag:* Ccy

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 193

**Usage Guideline details**

- **on [camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Currency](#)**  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.20.4 Name

*XML Tag:* Nm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text"](#) on page 239

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Name](#)) is removed.

## 4.20.5 Owner

*XML Tag:* Ownr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the account.

The **Ownr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Owner](#)) is removed.

## 4.20.6 Servicer

XML Tag: Svcr

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

The **Svcr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]	⊘	36







#### Usage Guideline details

- on [camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Servicer](#)

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.21 CashAccountType2

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.9 , 1.1.9	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		45
1.2.10 , 1.1.10	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		45

**Used in element(s)**

"Type" on page 40, "Type" on page 42

### 4.21.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

**Warning** Either Code or Proprietary must be present, but not both.

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "CashAccountType4Code" on page 209

### 4.21.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]







**Warning** Either Code or Proprietary must be present, but not both.

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.


*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.22 CashBalance3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance details.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.24	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		46
2.31	CreditLine	<CdtLine>		[0..1]		46
2.34	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		47

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.35	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		47
2.36	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		47
2.37	Availability	<Avlbty>		[0..*]		47

**Rules****R9 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule ✓**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00098
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for forward available balance.

**Used in element(s)**

"Balance" on page 16







## 4.22.1 Type


XML Tag: Tp

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature of a balance.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BalanceType12" on page 26 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.25	CodeOrProprietary	<CdOrPrtry>		[1..1]		27
2.28	SubType	<SubTp>		[0..1]		27







## 4.22.2 CreditLine


XML Tag: CdtLine

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the credit line.

The **CdtLine** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CreditLine2" on page 59 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.32	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		59
2.33	Amount	<Amt>		[0..1]		59

### 4.22.3 Amount

XML Tag: Amt

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the cash balance.

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

### 4.22.4 CreditDebitIndicator

XML Tag: CdtDbtInd

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance.

Usage: A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 216







### 4.22.5 Date


XML Tag: Dt



Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates the date (and time) of the balance.

The **Dt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "DateAndDateTimeChoice" on page 66 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
4.1.0	Date	<Dt>	{Or	[1..1]		66
4.1.1	DateTime	<DtTm>	Or}	[1..1]		66

 ,  >> Note as not all **Dt** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

### 4.22.6 Availability

XML Tag: Avlbty

Presence: [0..\*]

**Definition:** Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

**Usage:** This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

**Example:** When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

The **Avlbtty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CashBalanceAvailability2" on page 48 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.38 , 2.71 , 2.86 , 2.158	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		49
2.41 , 2.74 , 2.89 , 2.161	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		49
2.42 , 2.75 , 2.90 , 2.162	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		49

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Availability) is removed.

## 4.23 CashBalanceAvailability2

**Definition:** Indicates when the amount of money will become available, ie can be accessed and start generating interest.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.38 , 2.71 , 2.86 , 2.158	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		49
2.41 , 2.74 , 2.89 , 2.161	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		49



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.42 , 2.75 , 2.90 , 2.162	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		49

**Used in element(s)**

"Availability" on page 47, "Availability" on page 170, "Availability" on page 75, "Availability" on page 140







## 4.23.1 Date

*XML Tag:* Dt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates when the amount of money will become available.

The **Dt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CashBalanceAvailabilityDate1" on page 50 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.39 , 2.72 , 2.87 , 2.159	NumberOfDays	<NbOfDays>	{Or	[1..1]		50
2.40 , 2.73 , 2.88 , 2.160	ActualDate	<Act/Dt>	Or}	[1..1]		50

## 4.23.2 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the available amount.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.23.3 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [1..1]







*Definition:* Indicates whether the availability balance is a credit or a debit balance.

*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216

## 4.24 CashBalanceAvailabilityDate1

*Definition:* Indicates when the amount of money will become available.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.39 , 2.72 , 2.87 , 2.159	NumberOfDays	<NbOfDays>	{Or	[1..1]		50
2.40 , 2.73 , 2.88 , 2.160	ActualDate	<ActlDt>	Or}	[1..1]		50

Used in element(s)

"Date" on page 49

### 4.24.1 NumberOfDays

*XML Tag:* NbOfDays

*Presence:* [1..1]

#### Warning

*Definition:* Indicates the number of float days attached to the balance.

*Datatype:* "Max15PlusSignedNumericText" on page 236

### 4.24.2 ActualDate

*XML Tag:* ActlDt

*Presence:* [1..1]







#### Warning

*Definition:* Identifies the actual availability date.


*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233



## 4.25 ChargeType2Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the charge type.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.110 , 2.177	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		51

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.111 , 2.178	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		51

 ,  >> Note as not all **ChargeType2Choice** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

Used in element(s)

"Type" on page 53

## 4.25.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Charge type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ChargeType1Code" on page 212







## 4.25.2 Proprietary

XML Tag: Prtry

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "GenericIdentification3" on page 94 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
7.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		94
7.1.1	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		95

Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Charges/Type/Proprietary) is removed.

## 4.26 ChargesInformation6

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the charges related to the payment transaction.

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.106 , 2.173	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount	<TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>		[0..1]	!⊗	52
2.107 , 2.174	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		52
2.108 , 2.175	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		53
2.109 , 2.176	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		53
2.112 , 2.179	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]	!⊗	53
2.113 , 2.180	Bearer	 		[0..1]	!⊗	53
2.114 , 2.181	Party	<Pty>		[0..1]	!⊗	54
2.115 , 2.182	Tax	<Tax>		[0..1]	!⊗	54

!⊗ , !⊠ >> Note as not all **ChargesInformation6** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Used in element(s)

"Charges" on page 76, "Charges" on page 143

## 4.26.1 TotalChargesAndTaxAmount

*XML Tag:* TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all charges and taxes applied to the entry.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Charges/TotalChargesAndTaxAmount) is removed.

## 4.26.2 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.26.3 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the charges amount is a credit or a debit amount.

*Usage:* A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216







## 4.26.4 Type


*XML Tag:* Tp



*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of charge.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ChargeType2Choice" on page 50 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.110 , 2.177	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		51
2.111 , 2.178	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		51

 ,  >> Note as not all **Tp** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## 4.26.5 Rate

*XML Tag:* Rate

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the amount of the charge or fee.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 240

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Charges/Rate) is removed.

## 4.26.6 Bearer

*XML Tag:* Br

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies which party/parties will bear the charges associated with the processing of the payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "ChargeBearerType1Code" on page 210

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Charges/Bearer) is removed.

## 4.26.7 Party

*XML Tag:* Pty

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

The **Pty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4" on page 35 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -   
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Charges/Party) is removed.

## 4.26.8 Tax

*XML Tag:* Tax

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax applied to charges.

The **Tax** block contains the following elements (see datatype "TaxCharges2" on page 155 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -   
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.116 , 2.183	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		155
2.117 , 2.184	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]		155







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.118 , 2.185	Amount	<Amt>		[0..1]		156

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Charges/Tax](#)) is removed.

## 4.27 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.61 , 6.1.4	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		55
1.2.62 , 6.1.5	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		55

**Used in element(s)**

"[ClearingSystemIdentification](#)" on page 56

### 4.27.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code](#)" on page 226

### 4.27.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 237

## 4.28 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.60 , 6.1.3	ClearingSystemIdentification	<ClrSysId>		[0..1]		56
1.2.63 , 6.1.6	MemberIdentification	<Mmbld>		[1..1]		56

Used in element(s)

["ClearingSystemMemberIdentification" on page 86](#)







## 4.28.1 ClearingSystemIdentification

XML Tag: ClrSysId

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

The **ClrSysId** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice" on page 55](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.61 , 6.1.4	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		55
1.2.62 , 6.1.5	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		55

## 4.28.2 MemberIdentification

XML Tag: Mmbld







Presence: [1..1]

**Definition:** Identification of a member of a clearing system.

**Datatype:** ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.29 ContactDetails2

**Definition:** Communication device number or electronic address used for communication.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.35 , 1.2.49	NamePrefix	<NmPrfx>		[0..1]		57



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.36 , 1.2.50	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		57
9.1.37 , 1.2.51	PhoneNumber	<PhneNb>		[0..1]		57
9.1.38 , 1.2.52	MobileNumber	<MobNb>		[0..1]		57
9.1.39 , 1.2.53	FaxNumber	<FaxNb>		[0..1]		58
9.1.40 , 1.2.54	EmailAddress	<EmailAdr>		[0..1]		58
9.1.41 , 1.2.55	Other	<Othr>		[0..1]		58

Used in element(s)

"ContactDetails" on page 114

## 4.29.1 NamePrefix

XML Tag: NmPrfx

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: "NamePrefix1Code" on page 239

## 4.29.2 Name

XML Tag: Nm

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 235

## 4.29.3 PhoneNumber

XML Tag: PhneNb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 241

## 4.29.4 MobileNumber

XML Tag: MobNb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: ["PhoneNumber" on page 241](#)

## 4.29.5 FaxNumber

XML Tag: FaxNb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: ["PhoneNumber" on page 241](#)

## 4.29.6 EmailAddress

XML Tag: EmailAdr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: ["Max2048Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.29.7 Other

XML Tag: Othr







Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Contact details in another form.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.30 CorporateAction1

Definition: An event determined by a corporation's board of directors, that changes the existing corporate capital structure or financial condition.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.309	Code	<Cd>		[0..1]		58
2.310	Number	<Nb>		[0..1]		59
2.311	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		59

Used in element(s)

["CorporateAction" on page 83](#)

### 4.30.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the code of corporate action event, in free-text format.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.30.2 Number

XML Tag: Nb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.30.3 Proprietary

XML Tag: Prtry







Presence: [0..1]


Definition: Proprietary corporate action event information.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.31 CreditLine2

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details of the credit line.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.32	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		59
2.33	Amount	<Amt>		[0..1]		59

Used in element(s)

["CreditLine" on page 46](#)

### 4.31.1 Included

XML Tag: Incl

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether or not the credit line is included in the balance.

Usage: If not present, credit line is not included in the balance amount.

Datatype: ["TrueFalseIndicator" on page 244](#)

### 4.31.2 Amount

XML Tag: Amt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the credit line.







Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193


#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/CreditLine/Amount) is removed.

## 4.32 CreditorReferenceInformation2

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.257	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		60
2.262	Reference	<Ref>		[0..1]		60

#### Used in element(s)

"CreditorReferenceInformation" on page 151







### 4.32.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of creditor reference.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CreditorReferenceType2" on page 62 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.258	CodeOrProprietary	<CdOrPrtry>		[1..1]		62
2.261	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		62

### 4.32.2 Reference

*XML Tag:* Ref

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

*Usage:* If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Reference

**Comment:**

For Swiss QR bill payments received this field will contain the QR code or ISO Code based on the qualifier provided in Code or Proprietary field.

## 4.33 CreditorReferenceType1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the type of document referred by the creditor.

🔴 Removed - 🟡 Partial Removed - 🟡 Ignored - 🟡 Partial Ignored - ⚠️ Details below -  
 M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.259	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]	⚠️	61
2.260	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]	⚠️	61

#### Used in element(s)

"CodeOrProprietary" on page 62

### 4.33.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of creditor reference, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType3Code" on page 216

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code

**Comment:**

For Swiss QR bill payments received quoting the ISO code word, a value SCOR will be quoted in this field and the relevant ISO code will be provided in the reference field.

### 4.33.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Creditor reference type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

#### Usage Guideline details

- on [camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Proprietary](#)

**Comment:**

For Swiss QR bill payments received quoting the QR code word, a value QRR will be quoted in this field and the relevant QR code will be provided in the reference field.

## 4.34 CreditorReferenceType2

*Definition:* Specifies the type of creditor reference.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -

📌 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.258	CodeOrProprietary	<CdOrPrtry>		[1..1]		62
2.261	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		62

#### Used in element(s)

["Type" on page 60](#)

### 4.34.1 CodeOrProprietary

*XML Tag:* CdOrPrtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

The **CdOrPrtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["CreditorReferenceType1Choice" on page 61](#) for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -

📌 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.259	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]	⚠	61
2.260	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]	⚠	61

### 4.34.2 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.35 CurrencyAndAmountRange2

*Definition:* Range of amount values.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.0	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		63
3.1.16	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		63
3.1.17	Currency	<Ccy>		[1..1]		64

**Used in element(s)**

["ValidityRange" on page 129](#)







### 4.35.1 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified amount or amount range.

The **Amt** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["ImpliedCurrencyAmountRangeChoice" on page 99](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.1	FromAmount	<FrAmt>	{Or	[1..1]		99
3.1.4	ToAmount	<ToAmt>	Or	[1..1]		100
3.1.7	FromToAmount	<FrToAmt>	Or	[1..1]		100
3.1.14	EqualAmount	<EQAmt>	Or	[1..1]		101
3.1.15	NotEqualAmount	<NEQAmt>	Or}	[1..1]		101

### 4.35.2 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 216](#)

### 4.35.3 Currency

*XML Tag:* Ccy

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

### 4.36 CurrencyExchange5

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the currency exchange.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬡ Ignored - ⬡ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
 M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.3 , 2.1.12 , 2.1.21 , 2.1.30 , 2.1.40	SourceCurrency	<SrcCcy>		[1..1]		65
2.1.4 , 2.1.13 , 2.1.22 , 2.1.31 , 2.1.41	TargetCurrency	<TrgtCcy>		[0..1]		65
2.1.5 , 2.1.14 , 2.1.23 , 2.1.32 , 2.1.42	UnitCurrency	<UnitCcy>		[0..1]		65
2.1.6 , 2.1.15 , 2.1.24 , 2.1.33 , 2.1.43	ExchangeRate	<XchgRate>		[1..1]		65
2.1.7 , 2.1.16 , 2.1.25 , 2.1.34 , 2.1.44	ContractIdentification	<CtrctId>		[0..1]	🚫	65
2.1.8 , 2.1.17 , 2.1.26 , 2.1.35 , 2.1.45	QuotationDate	<QtnDt>		[0..1]		66

🚫 , ⬡ >> Note as not all **CurrencyExchange5** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored.

Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Used in element(s)

"CurrencyExchange" on page 23, "CurrencyExchange" on page 24



## 4.36.1 SourceCurrency

*XML Tag:* SrcCcy

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

## 4.36.2 TargetCurrency

*XML Tag:* TrgtCcy

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

## 4.36.3 UnitCurrency

*XML Tag:* UnitCcy

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

## 4.36.4 ExchangeRate

*XML Tag:* XchgRate

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency ( $\text{ExchangeRate} = \text{UnitCurrency} / \text{QuotedCurrency}$ ).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 208

## 4.36.5 ContractIdentification

*XML Tag:* CtrctId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails/InstructedAmount/CurrencyExchange/ContractIdentification**) is removed.

## 4.36.6 QuotationDate

*XML Tag:* QtnDt







*Presence:* [0..1]



*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.



*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 233](#)

## 4.37 DateAndDateTimeChoice

*Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
4.1.0	Date	<Dt>	{Or	[1..1]		66
4.1.1	DateTime	<DtTm>	Or}	[1..1]	 	66

 , 
  >> Note as not all **DateAndDateTimeChoice** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

**Used in element(s)**

["BookingDate" on page 139](#), ["Date" on page 47](#), ["Date" on page 124](#), ["ValueDate" on page 139](#)

### 4.37.1 Date

*XML Tag:* Dt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 233](#)

### 4.37.2 DateTime

*XML Tag:* DtTm

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 233](#)







**Usage Guideline details**

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Date/DateTime](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BookingDate/DateTime](#)) is removed.

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/ValueDate/DateTime](#)) is removed.

## 4.38 DateAndPlaceOfBirth

*Definition:* Date and place of birth of a person.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.23 , 1.2.37	BirthDate	<BirthDt>		[1..1]		67
9.1.24 , 1.2.38	ProvinceOfBirth	<PrvcOfBirth>		[0..1]		67
9.1.25 , 1.2.39	CityOfBirth	<CityOfBirth>		[1..1]		67
9.1.26 , 1.2.40	CountryOfBirth	<CtryOfBirth>		[1..1]		67

Used in element(s)

["DateAndPlaceOfBirth" on page 115](#)

### 4.38.1 BirthDate

*XML Tag:* BirthDt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date on which a person is born.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 233](#)

### 4.38.2 ProvinceOfBirth

*XML Tag:* PrvcOfBirth

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Province where a person was born.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.38.3 CityOfBirth

*XML Tag:* CityOfBirth

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* City where a person was born.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.38.4 CountryOfBirth

*XML Tag:* CtryOfBirth







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Country where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 215

## 4.39 DatePeriodDetails

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.29 , 13.1.40	FromDate	<FrDt>		[1..1]		68
13.1.30 , 13.1.41	ToDate	<ToDt>		[1..1]		68

**Used in element(s)**

"FromToDate" on page 161

### 4.39.1 FromDate

*XML Tag:* FrDt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

### 4.39.2 ToDate

*XML Tag:* ToDt







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.40 DateTimePeriodDetails

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
5.1.0	FromDateTime	<FrDtTm>		[1..1]		69
5.1.1	ToDateTime	<ToDtTm>		[1..1]		69

**Used in element(s)**

["FromDate" on page 10](#), ["FromDate" on page 180](#), ["FromDate" on page 13](#)

## 4.40.1 FromDateTime

*XML Tag:* FrDtTm

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the range starts.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 233](#)

## 4.40.2 ToDateTime

*XML Tag:* ToDtTm







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the range ends.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 233](#)

## 4.41 DocumentAdjustment1

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.251	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		69
2.252	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		69
2.253	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		70
2.254	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..1]		70

**Used in element(s)**

["AdjustmentAmountAndReason" on page 133](#)

### 4.41.1 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

### 4.41.2 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216

### 4.41.3 Reason

*XML Tag:* Rsn

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 238

### 4.41.4 AdditionalInformation

*XML Tag:* AddtlInf

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 235

## 4.42 EntryDetails1

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the underlying transaction(s) and/or batched entries.

Removed - 
 Partial Removed - 
 Ignored - 
 Partial Ignored - 
 Details below - 
 Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.136	Batch	<Btch>		[0..1]		70
2.142	TransactionDetails	<TxDtls>		[0..*]		71

**Used in element(s)**

"EntryDetails" on page 145

### 4.42.1 Batch

*XML Tag:* Btch



*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on batched transactions.

The **Btch** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BatchInformation2" on page 33 for details)

Removed - 
 Partial Removed - 
 Ignored - 
 Partial Ignored - 
 Details below - 
 Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.137	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[0..1]		33

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.138	PaymentInformationIdentification	<PmtInfId>		[0..1]	M 	34
2.139	NumberOfTransactions	<NbOfTxs>		[0..1]	M 	34
2.140	TotalAmount	<TtlAmt>		[0..1]	M	35
2.141	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]	M	35

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/Batch

- HSBC\_Batch:

Reports the details of the original batch submitted by the customer. Batch details are supported for all the countries where itemised statements are requested.

Batch details are provided in the Batch tag for Bulk transactions and itemised / de-batched statements for all the countries supporting the de-batch functionality.

Countries where the de-batch functionality is not supported, the bulk details are reported in the transaction details of the statement.







## 4.42.2 TransactionDetails




XML Tag: TxDtIs

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the underlying transaction(s).

The **TxDtIs** block contains the following elements (see datatype "EntryTransaction2" on page 72 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -   
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.143	References	<Refs>		[0..1]	M	73
2.156	AmountDetails	<AmtDtIs>		[0..1]		74
2.157	Availability	<Avlbty>		[0..*]		75
2.163	BankTransactionCode	<BkTxCd>		[0..1]		75
2.172	Charges	<Chrgs>		[0..*]		76
2.186	Interest	<Intrst>		[0..*]		77
2.199	RelatedParties	<RltdPties>		[0..1]		77
2.211	RelatedAgents	<RltdAgt>		[0..1]		78
2.224	Purpose	<Purp>		[0..1]		79

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.227	RelatedRemittanceInformation	<RltdRmtInf>		[0..10]	⊘	79
2.234	RemittanceInformation	<RmtInf>		[0..1]		80
2.266	RelatedDates	<RltdDts>		[0..1]	⊘	80
2.277	RelatedPrice	<RltdPric>		[0..1]	⊘	81
2.282	RelatedQuantities	<RltdQties>		[0..*]	⊘	81
2.287	FinancialInstrumentIdentification	<FinInstrmId>		[0..1]	⊘	82
2.292	Tax	<Tax>		[0..1]	⊘	82
2.293	ReturnInformation	<RtrInf>		[0..1]		83
2.308	CorporateAction	<CorpActn>		[0..1]	⊘	83
2.312	SafekeepingAccount	<SfkpgAcct>		[0..1]	⊘	84
2.313	AdditionalTransactionInformation	<AddtlTxInf>		[0..1]	⊘	84

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails

- HSBC\_TransactionDetails:

Transaction information will contain the following based on the input:

- Individual transaction information
- Batch details - If the country does not support de-batching.
- Transaction details within a batch in case of itemised / de-batched statements

## 4.43 EntryTransaction2

**Definition:** Set of elements used to identify the underlying transaction.

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ♦ Ignored - ♦ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
 M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.143	References	<Refs>		[0..1]	M	73
2.156	AmountDetails	<AmtDtls>		[0..1]	⚠	74
2.157	Availability	<Avlbty>		[0..*]	⊘	75
2.163	BankTransactionCode	<BkTxCd>		[0..1]		75
2.172	Charges	<Chrgs>		[0..*]		76



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.186	Interest	<Intrst>		[0..*]	⊘	77
2.199	RelatedParties	<RltdPties>		[0..1]		77
2.211	RelatedAgents	<RltdAgt>		[0..1]		78
2.224	Purpose	<Purp>		[0..1]		79
2.227	RelatedRemittanceInformation	<RltdRmtInf>		[0..10]	⊘	79
2.234	RemittanceInformation	<RmtInf>		[0..1]		80
2.266	RelatedDates	<RltdDts>		[0..1]	⊘	80
2.277	RelatedPrice	<RltdPric>		[0..1]	⊘	81
2.282	RelatedQuantities	<RltdQties>		[0..*]	⊘	81
2.287	FinancialInstrumentIdentification	<FinInstrmId>		[0..1]	⊘	82
2.292	Tax	<Tax>		[0..1]	⊘	82
2.293	ReturnInformation	<RtrInf>		[0..1]		83
2.308	CorporateAction	<CorpActn>		[0..1]	⊘	83
2.312	SafekeepingAccount	<SfkpgAcct>		[0..1]	⊘	84
2.313	AdditionalTransactionInformation	<AddtlTxInf>		[0..1]	⊘	84

**Used in element(s)**

"TransactionDetails" on page 71

## 4.43.1 References

*XML Tag:* Refs

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the identification of the underlying transaction.

The **Refs** block contains the following elements (see datatype "TransactionReferences2" on page 187 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.144	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[0..1]	⚠	188
2.145	AccountServicerReference	<AcctSvcrRef>		[0..1]	<b>M</b> ⚠	188
2.146	PaymentInformationIdentification	<PmtInfId>		[0..1]	⚠	189
2.147	InstructionIdentification	<InstrId>		[0..1]	⚠	189
2.148	EndToEndIdentification	<EndToEndId>		[0..1]	<b>M</b> ⚠	190

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.149	TransactionIdentification	<TxId>		[0..1]		190
2.150	MandateIdentification	<MndtId>		[0..1]		191
2.151	ChequeNumber	<ChqNb>		[0..1]	⚠	191
2.152	ClearingSystemReference	<ClrSysRef>		[0..1]	⚠	191
2.153	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]	🚫	192

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References  
This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1

## 4.43.2 AmountDetails

XML Tag: AmtDtls

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements providing detailed information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) should be used in case booking is for a single transaction and the original amount is different from the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual original amounts are provided in case of a batch or aggregate booking.

The **AmtDtls** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 18 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⚠ Ignored - ⚠ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.0	InstructedAmount	<InstdAmt>		[0..1]	⚠	19
2.1.9	TransactionAmount	<TxAmt>		[0..1]	⚠	20
2.1.18	CounterValueAmount	<CntrValAmt>		[0..1]	🚫	20
2.1.27	AnnouncedPostingAmount	<AnncdPstngAmt>		[0..1]	🚫	21
2.1.36	ProprietaryAmount	<PrtryAmt>		[0..*]	🚫	21

🚫 , ⚠ >> Note as not all **AmtDtls** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/AmountDetails

### – HSBC\_AmountDetails:

Reports the Amount Details for:

- Individual transaction
- Batch details - If the country does not support de-batching.
- Transaction details within a batch in case of itemised / de-batched statements

## 4.43.3 Availability

*XML Tag:* Avlbty







*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

The **Avlbty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CashBalanceAvailability2](#)" on page 48 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.38 , 2.71 , 2.86 , 2.158	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		49
2.41 , 2.74 , 2.89 , 2.161	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		49
2.42 , 2.75 , 2.90 , 2.162	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		49

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Availability](#)) is removed.

## 4.43.4 BankTransactionCode

*XML Tag:* BkTxCd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

The **BkTxCd** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BankTransactionCodeStructure4](#)" on page 28 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.62 , 2.92 , 2.164 , 2.295	Domain	<Domn>		[0..1]	🚫	29
2.67 , 2.97 , 2.169 , 2.300	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	30

🚫 , ⬜ >> Note as not all **BkTxCd** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## 4.43.5 Charges

*XML Tag:* Chrgs

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides information on the charges included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) can be used in case the booking is for a single transaction, and charges are included in the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual charge amounts are applied to individual transactions in case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

The **Chrgs** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[ChargesInformation6](#)" on page 51 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.106 , 2.173	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount	<TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>		[0..1]	🚫	52
2.107 , 2.174	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		52
2.108 , 2.175	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		53
2.109 , 2.176	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		53
2.112 , 2.179	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]	🚫	53
2.113 , 2.180	Bearer	 		[0..1]	🚫	53

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.114 , 2.181	Party	<Pty>		[0..1]	❌	54
2.115 , 2.182	Tax	<Tax>		[0..1]	❌	54

❌ , ⚠️ >> Note as not all **Chrgs** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

## 4.43.6 Interest

*XML Tag:* Intrst

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component (on transaction level) can be used if the booking is for a single transaction, and interest amount is included in the entry amount. It can also be used if individual interest amounts are applied to individual transactions in the case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

The **Intrst** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionInterest2](#)" on page 178 for details)

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ⚠️ Ignored - ⚠️ Partial Ignored - ⚠️ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.123 , 2.187	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		178
2.124 , 2.188	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		179
2.125 , 2.189	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		179
2.128 , 2.192	Rate	<Rate>		[0..*]		179
2.133 , 2.197	FromToDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		180
2.134 , 2.198	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		180

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Interest) is removed.

## 4.43.7 RelatedParties

*XML Tag:* RltdPties

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the parties related to the underlying transaction.

The **RltdPties** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionParty2](#)" on page 180 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.200	InitiatingParty	<InitgPty>		[0..1]	⊘	181
2.201	Debtor	<Dbtr>		[0..1]		181
2.202	DebtorAccount	<DbtrAcct>		[0..1]		182
2.203	UltimateDebtor	<UltmtDbtr>		[0..1]		182
2.204	Creditor	<Cdtr>		[0..1]		183
2.205	CreditorAccount	<CdtrAcct>		[0..1]		183
2.206	UltimateCreditor	<UltmtCdtr>		[0..1]		184
2.207	TradingParty	<TradgPty>		[0..1]	⊘	184
2.208	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..*]	⊘	185

## 4.43.8 RelatedAgents

*XML Tag:* RltdAgts



*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the agents related to the underlying transaction.

The **RltdAgts** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionAgents2](#)" on page 171 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.212	DebtorAgent	<DbtrAgt>		[0..1]		171
2.213	CreditorAgent	<CdtrAgt>		[0..1]		171
2.214	IntermediaryAgent1	<IntrmyAgt1>		[0..1]	⊘	172
2.215	IntermediaryAgent2	<IntrmyAgt2>		[0..1]	⊘	172
2.216	IntermediaryAgent3	<IntrmyAgt3>		[0..1]	⊘	173
2.217	ReceivingAgent	<RcvgAgt>		[0..1]	⊘	173
2.218	DeliveringAgent	<DlvrAgt>		[0..1]	⊘	174
2.219	IssuingAgent	<IssgAgt>		[0..1]	⊘	174

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.220	SettlementPlace	<SttlmPlc>		[0..1]		175
2.221	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..*]		175

## 4.43.9 Purpose







*XML Tag:* Purp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

The **Purp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "Purpose2Choice" on page 127 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -   
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.225	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		127
2.226	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		128







## 4.43.10 RelatedRemittanceInformation

*XML Tag:* RltdRmtInf

*Presence:* [0..10]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information related to the handling of the remittance information by any of the agents in the transaction processing chain.

The **RltdRmtInf** block contains the following elements (see datatype "RemittanceLocation2" on page 135 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -   
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.228	RemittanceIdentification	<RmtId>		[0..1]		136
2.229	RemittanceLocationMethod	<RmtLctnMtd>		[0..1]		136
2.230	RemittanceLocationElectronicAddress	<RmtLctnElctrcnAdr>		[0..1]		136
2.231	RemittanceLocationPostalAddress	<RmtLctnPstlAdr>		[0..1]		136

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedRemittanceInformation](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.11 RemittanceInformation




XML Tag: RmtInf

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Structured information that enables the matching, ie, reconciliation, of a payment with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an account receivable system.

The **RmtInf** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[RemittanceInformation5](#)" on [page 134](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.235	Unstructured	<Ustrd>		[0..*]	 	134
2.236	Structured	<Strd>		[0..*]		134







## 4.43.12 RelatedDates

XML Tag: RltdDts

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Set of elements used to identify the dates related to the underlying transactions.

The **RltdDts** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionDates2](#)" on [page 176](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.267	AcceptanceDateTime	<AcceptncDtTm>		[0..1]		176
2.268	TradeActivityContractualSettlement-Date	<TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>		[0..1]		177
2.269	TradeDate	<TradDt>		[0..1]		177
2.270	InterbankSettlementDate	<IntrBkSttlmDt>		[0..1]		177
2.271	StartDate	<StartDt>		[0..1]		177
2.272	EndDate	<EndDt>		[0..1]		177
2.273	TransactionDateTime	<TxDtTm>		[0..1]		177
2.274	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..*]		178



## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedDates](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.13 RelatedPrice

*XML Tag:* RltdPric

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the price information related to the underlying transaction.

The **RltdPric** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionPrice2Choice](#)" on page 185 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.278	DealPrice	<DealPric>	{Or	[1..1]		186
2.279	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..*]		186

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedPrice](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.14 RelatedQuantities

*XML Tag:* RltdQties

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the related quantities, such as securities, in the underlying transaction.

The **RltdQties** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionQuantities1Choice](#)" on page 186 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.283	Quantity	<Qty>	{Or	[1..1]		187
2.284	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		187

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedQuantities](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.15 FinancialInstrumentIdentification

*XML Tag:* FinInstrmId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a security, as assigned under a formal or proprietary identification scheme.

The **FinInstrmId** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[SecurityIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 149 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.288	ISIN	<ISIN>	{Or	[1..1]		150
2.289	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		150

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/FinancialInstrumentIdentification](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.16 Tax

*XML Tag:* Tax

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax.

The **Tax** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TaxInformation3](#)" on page 156 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.0	Creditor	<Cdtr>		[0..1]		156
13.1.4	Debtor	<Dbtr>		[0..1]		157
13.1.11	AdministrationZone	<AdmstnZn>		[0..1]		157
13.1.12	ReferenceNumber	<RefNb>		[0..1]		157
13.1.13	Method	<Mtd>		[0..1]		157
13.1.14	TotalTaxableBaseAmount	<TtlTaxblBaseAmt>		[0..1]		158

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.15	TotalTaxAmount	<TtlTaxAmt>		[0..1]		158
13.1.16	Date	<Dt>		[0..1]		158
13.1.17	SequenceNumber	<SeqNb>		[0..1]		158
13.1.18	Record	<Rcrd>		[0..*]		158

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Tax](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.17 ReturnInformation





XML Tag: RtrInf

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the return information.

The **RtrInf** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[ReturnReasonInformation10](#)" on page 147 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.294	OriginalBankTransactionCode	<OrgnIBkTxCd>		[0..1]		147
2.303	Originator	<Orgtr>		[0..1]		148
2.304	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		148
2.307	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..*]		149







## 4.43.18 CorporateAction

XML Tag: CorpActn

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the underlying corporate action.

The **CorpActn** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CorporateAction1](#)" on page 58 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.309	Code	<Cd>		[0..1]		58

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.310	Number	<Nb>		[0..1]		59
2.311	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		59

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/CorporateAction](#)) is removed.







## 4.43.19 SafekeepingAccount

*XML Tag:* SfkpgAcct

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Safekeeping or investment account. A safekeeping account is an account on which a securities entry is made. An investment account is an account between an investor(s) and a fund manager or a fund. The account can contain holdings in any investment fund or investment fund class managed (or distributed) by the fund manager, within the same fund family.

The **SfkpgAcct** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CashAccount16](#)" on page 39 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		39
1.1.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		40
1.1.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]		41
1.1.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		41

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/SafekeepingAccount](#)) is removed.

## 4.43.20 AdditionalTransactionInformation

*XML Tag:* AddtlTxInf

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the transaction.







*Datatype:* "[Max500Text](#)" on page 238

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/Additional-TransactionInformation](#)) is removed.

## 4.44 FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice

*Definition:* Sets of elements to identify a name of the organisation identification scheme.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.79 , 6.1.22	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		85
1.2.80 , 6.1.23	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		85

### Used in element(s)

"SchemeName" on page 94

### 4.44.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code"](#) on page 227

### 4.44.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry







*Presence:* [1..1]


*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 237

## 4.45 FinancialInstitutionIdentification7

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify a financial institution.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.58 , 6.1.1	BIC	<BIC>		[0..1]		86

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.59 , 6.1.2	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification	<ClrSysMmbld>		[0..1]	!⊗	86
1.2.64 , 6.1.7	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]	!⊗	87
1.2.65 , 6.1.8	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]	!⊗	87
1.2.76 , 6.1.19	Other	<Othr>		[0..1]	!⊗	89

!⊗ , ⊕ >> Note as not all **FinancialInstitutionIdentification7** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Used in element(s)

"FinancialInstitutionIdentification" on page 36

## 4.45.1 BIC

XML Tag: BIC

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Datatype:* "BICIdentifier" on page 196

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Service/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/BIC

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.45.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification

XML Tag: ClrSysMmbld

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

The **ClrSysMmbld** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2" on page 55 for details)

⊗ Removed - !⊗ Partial Removed - ⊕ Ignored - ⊕ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.60 , 6.1.3	ClearingSystemIdentification	<ClrSysId>		[0..1]		56

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.63 , 6.1.6	MemberIdentification	<Mmbld>		[1..1]		56

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Service/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/ClearingSystemMemberIdentification](#)) is removed.

### 4.45.3 Name

XML Tag: Nm

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 235

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Service/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/Name](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/CreditorAgent/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/Name](#)) is removed.







### 4.45.4 PostalAddress

XML Tag: PstlAdr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

The **PstlAdr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PostalAddress6" on page 116 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.2 , 1.2.16 , 1.2.66 , 1.2.86 , 6.1.9 , 6.1.29 , 10.1.0	AddressType	<AdrTp>		[0..1]		118
9.1.3 , 1.2.17 , 1.2.67 , 1.2.87 , 6.1.10 ,	Department	<Dept>		[0..1]		118

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
6.1.30 , 10.1.1						
9.1.4 , 1.2.18 , 1.2.68 , 1.2.88 , 6.1.11 , 6.1.31 , 10.1.2	SubDepartment	<SubDept>		[0..1]		119
9.1.5 , 1.2.19 , 1.2.69 , 1.2.89 , 6.1.12 , 6.1.32 , 10.1.3	StreetName	<StrtNm>		[0..1]		119
9.1.6 , 1.2.20 , 1.2.70 , 1.2.90 , 6.1.13 , 6.1.33 , 10.1.4	BuildingNumber	<BldgNb>		[0..1]		119
9.1.7 , 1.2.21 , 1.2.71 , 1.2.91 , 6.1.14 , 6.1.34 , 10.1.5	PostCode	<PstCd>		[0..1]		120
9.1.8 , 1.2.22 , 1.2.72 , 1.2.92 , 6.1.15 , 6.1.35 , 10.1.6	TownName	<TwnNm>		[0..1]		120
9.1.9 , 1.2.23 , 1.2.73 , 1.2.93 , 6.1.16 , 6.1.36 , 10.1.7	CountrySubDivision	<CtrySubDvsn>		[0..1]		120
9.1.10 , 1.2.24 , 1.2.74 , 1.2.94 , 6.1.17 , 6.1.37 , 10.1.8	Country	<Ctry>		[0..1]		121



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.11 , 1.2.25 , 1.2.75 , 1.2.95 , 6.1.18 , 6.1.38 , 10.1.9	AddressLine	<AdrLine>		[0..7]		121

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Service/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/PostalAddress) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/CreditorAgent/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/PostalAddress) is removed.







## 4.45.5 Other

XML Tag: Othr

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

The **Othr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "GenericFinancialIdentification1" on page 93 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.77 , 6.1.20	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		93
1.2.78 , 6.1.21	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		94
1.2.81 , 6.1.24	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		94

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Service/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/Other) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/CreditorAgent/FinancialInstitutionIdentification/Other) is removed.

## 4.46 FinancialInstrumentQuantityChoice

*Definition:* Choice between formats for the quantity of security.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
12.1.0	Unit	<Unit>	{Or	[1..1]		90
12.1.1	FaceAmount	<FaceAmt>	Or	[1..1]		90
12.1.2	AmortisedValue	<AmtsdVal>	Or}	[1..1]		90

#### Used in element(s)

"Quantity" on page 187

## 4.46.1 Unit

XML Tag: Unit

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as a number, eg, a number of shares.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 216

## 4.46.2 FaceAmount

XML Tag: FaceAmt

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, ie, the principal, of a debt instrument.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 234

## 4.46.3 AmortisedValue

XML Tag: AmtsdVal







Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, eg, a periodic reduction of a bond's principal amount.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 234

## 4.47 FromToAmountRange

Definition: Range of amount values.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.8	FromAmount	<FrAmt>		[1..1]		91
3.1.11	ToAmount	<ToAmt>		[1..1]		91

**Used in element(s)**

"FromToAmount" on page 100







## 4.47.1 FromAmount

*XML Tag:* FrAmt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

The **FrAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 25 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.2 , 3.1.5 , 3.1.9 , 3.1.12	BoundaryAmount	<BdryAmt>		[1..1]		26
3.1.3 , 3.1.6 , 3.1.10 , 3.1.13	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		26







## 4.47.2 ToAmount

*XML Tag:* ToAmt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

The **ToAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 25 for details)



 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.2 , 3.1.5 , 3.1.9 , 3.1.12	BoundaryAmount	<BdryAmt>		[1..1]		26
3.1.3 , 3.1.6 , 3.1.10 , 3.1.13	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		26

## 4.48 GenericAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.3 , 1.1.3	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		92
1.2.4 , 1.1.4	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		92
1.2.7 , 1.1.7	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		93

 ,  >> Note as not all **GenericAccountIdentification1** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

Used in element(s)

"Other" on page 8

## 4.48.1 Identification

XML Tag: Id

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max34Text" on page 237







## 4.48.2 SchemeName

XML Tag: SchmeNm

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

The **SchmeNm** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AccountSchemeName1Choice](#)" on page 11 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.5 , 1.1.5	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		11
1.2.6 , 1.1.6	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		11

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Identification/Other/SchemeName](#)) is removed.

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/CreditorAccount/Identification/Other/SchemeName](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/DebtorAccount/Identification/Other/SchemeName](#)) is removed.

### 4.48.3 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.







*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Account/Identification/Other/Issuer](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/CreditorAccount/Identification/Other/Issuer](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/DebtorAccount/Identification/Other/Issuer](#)) is removed.

## 4.49 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.77 , 6.1.20	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		93
1.2.78 , 6.1.21	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		94
1.2.81 , 6.1.24	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		94

Used in element(s)

["Other" on page 89](#)

### 4.49.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)







## 4.49.2 SchemeName

*XML Tag:* SchmeNm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

The **SchmeNm** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[FinancialIdentificationScheme-Name1Choice](#)" on page 85 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.79 , 6.1.22	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		85
1.2.80 , 6.1.23	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		85

## 4.49.3 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 237

## 4.50 GenericIdentification3

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
7.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		94
7.1.1	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		95

**Used in element(s)**

"[Proprietary](#)" on page 51

### 4.50.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, for example, account identifier.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 237

## 4.50.2 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.51 GenericOrganisationIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of an organisation.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.16 , 1.2.30	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		95
9.1.17 , 1.2.31	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		95
9.1.20 , 1.2.34	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		96

**Used in element(s)**

"Other" on page 107

### 4.51.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237







### 4.51.2 SchemeName

*XML Tag:* SchmeNm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

The **SchmeNm** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice](#)" on page 107 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.18 , 1.2.32	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		108

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.19 , 1.2.33	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		108

### 4.51.3 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.52 GenericPersonIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a person.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.28 , 1.2.42	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		96
9.1.29 , 1.2.43	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		96
9.1.32 , 1.2.46	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		97

**Used in element(s)**

"Other" on page 115

### 4.52.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237







### 4.52.2 SchemeName

*XML Tag:* SchmeNm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

The **SchmeNm** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PersonIdentificationScheme-Name1Choice" on page 116 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.30 , 1.2.44	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		116
9.1.31 , 1.2.45	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		116

### 4.52.3 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr







*Presence:* [0..1]




*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.53 GroupHeader42

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide further details of the message.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[1..1]		97
1.2	CreationDateTime	<CreDtTm>		[1..1]		97
1.3	MessageRecipient	<MsgRcpt>		[0..1]		98
1.4	MessagePagination	<MsgPgntn>		[0..1]		98
1.5	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..1]		99

**Used in element(s)**

"GroupHeader" on page 6

### 4.53.1 MessageIdentification

*XML Tag:* MsgId

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, and sent to the account owner or the party authorised to receive the message, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The account servicing institution has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per account owner for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.53.2 CreationDateTime

*XML Tag:* CreDtTm

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 233

### 4.53.3 MessageRecipient







*XML Tag:* MsgRcpt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party authorised by the account owner to receive information about movements on the account.

*Usage:* MessageRecipient should only be identified when different from the account owner.

The **MsgRcpt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PartyIdentification32" on page 110 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/GroupHeader/MessageRecipient) is removed.

### 4.53.4 MessagePagination







*XML Tag:* MsgPgntn

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the page number of the message.

*Usage:* The pagination of the message is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

The **MsgPgntn** block contains the following elements (see datatype "Pagination" on page 108 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
8.1.0	PageNumber	<PgNb>		[1..1]		108
8.1.1	LastPageIndicator	<LastPgInd>		[1..1]		109

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/GroupHeader/MessagePagination

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.53.5 AdditionalInformation

XML Tag: Addtllnf

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the message.







Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 238

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/GroupHeader/AdditionalInformation) is removed.

## 4.54 ImpliedCurrencyAmountRangeChoice

Definition: Choice between ranges of values in which an amount is considered valid or a specified amount value which has to be matched or unmatched to be valid.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.1	FromAmount	<FrAmt>	{Or	[1..1]		99
3.1.4	ToAmount	<ToAmt>	Or	[1..1]		100
3.1.7	FromToAmount	<FrToAmt>	Or	[1..1]		100
3.1.14	EqualAmount	<EQAmt>	Or	[1..1]		101
3.1.15	NotEqualAmount	<NEQAmt>	Or}	[1..1]		101

#### Used in element(s)

"Amount" on page 63

### 4.54.1 FromAmount

XML Tag: FrAmt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

The **FrAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 25 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.2 , 3.1.5 , 3.1.9 , 3.1.12	BoundaryAmount	<BdryAmt>		[1..1]		26
3.1.3 , 3.1.6 , 3.1.10 , 3.1.13	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		26

## 4.54.2 ToAmount

*XML Tag:* ToAmt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

The **ToAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 25 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.2 , 3.1.5 , 3.1.9 , 3.1.12	BoundaryAmount	<BdryAmt>		[1..1]		26
3.1.3 , 3.1.6 , 3.1.10 , 3.1.13	Included	<Incl>		[1..1]		26

## 4.54.3 FromToAmount

*XML Tag:* FrToAmt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.

The **FrToAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[FromToAmountRange](#)" on page 90 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.8	FromAmount	<FrAmt>		[1..1]		91
3.1.11	ToAmount	<ToAmt>		[1..1]		91

## 4.54.4 EqualAmount

XML Tag: EQAmt

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 234

## 4.54.5 NotEqualAmount

XML Tag: NEQAmt







Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 234

## 4.55 InterestType1Choice

Definition: Interest type is expressed as a code or a text.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.14 , 2.126 , 2.190	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		101
2.15 , 2.127 , 2.191	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		101

Used in element(s)

"Type" on page 9, "Type" on page 179

### 4.55.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest.

Datatype: "InterestType1Code" on page 235

### 4.55.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.56 MessageIdentification2

*Definition:* Set of elements providing the identification of a message.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.102	MessageNameIdentification	<MsgNmId>		[0..1]		102
2.103	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[0..1]		102

**Used in element(s)**

"AdditionalInformationIndicator" on page 142

### 4.56.1 MessageNameIdentification

*XML Tag:* MsgNmId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the message name identifier of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.56.2 MessageIdentification

*XML Tag:* MsgId







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.57 NameAndAddress10

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a party.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.232	Name	<Nm>		[1..1]		103
2.233	Address	<Adr>		[1..1]		103

**Used in element(s)**

["RemittanceLocationPostalAddress" on page 136](#)

## 4.57.1 Name

*XML Tag:* Nm

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 235](#)







## 4.57.2 Address

*XML Tag:* Adr

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Postal address of a party.

The **Adr** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["PostalAddress6" on page 116](#) for details)







 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.2 , 1.2.16 , 1.2.66 , 1.2.86 , 6.1.9 , 6.1.29 , 10.1.0	AddressType	<AdrTp>		[0..1]		118
9.1.3 , 1.2.17 , 1.2.67 , 1.2.87 , 6.1.10 , 6.1.30 , 10.1.1	Department	<Dept>		[0..1]		118
9.1.4 , 1.2.18 , 1.2.68 , 1.2.88 , 6.1.11 , 6.1.31 , 10.1.2	SubDepartment	<SubDept>		[0..1]		119
9.1.5 , 1.2.19 , 1.2.69 , 1.2.89 , 6.1.12 , 6.1.32 , 10.1.3	StreetName	<StrtNm>		[0..1]		119
9.1.6 , 1.2.20 , 1.2.70 ,	BuildingNumber	<BldgNb>		[0..1]		119

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.90 , 6.1.13 , 6.1.33 , 10.1.4						
9.1.7 , 1.2.21 , 1.2.71 , 1.2.91 , 6.1.14 , 6.1.34 , 10.1.5	PostCode	<PstCd>		[0..1]		120
9.1.8 , 1.2.22 , 1.2.72 , 1.2.92 , 6.1.15 , 6.1.35 , 10.1.6	TownName	<TwnNm>		[0..1]		120
9.1.9 , 1.2.23 , 1.2.73 , 1.2.93 , 6.1.16 , 6.1.36 , 10.1.7	CountrySubDivision	<CtrySubDvsn>		[0..1]		120
9.1.10 , 1.2.24 , 1.2.74 , 1.2.94 , 6.1.17 , 6.1.37 , 10.1.8	Country	<Ctry>		[0..1]		121
9.1.11 , 1.2.25 , 1.2.75 , 1.2.95 , 6.1.18 , 6.1.38 , 10.1.9	AddressLine	<AdrLine>		[0..7]		121

## 4.58 NumberAndSumOfTransactions1

*Definition:* Set of elements providing the total sum of entries.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.50 , 2.53	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		105
2.51 , 2.54	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		105



**Used in element(s)**

"TotalCreditEntries" on page 167, "TotalDebitEntries" on page 167

## 4.58.1 NumberOfEntries

XML Tag: NbOfNtries

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual entries included in the report.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 236

**Usage Guideline details**

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalCreditEntries/NumberOfEntries**  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalDebitEntries/NumberOfEntries**  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.58.2 Sum

XML Tag: Sum

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual entries included in the report.







Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 216

**Usage Guideline details**

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalCreditEntries/Sum**  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalDebitEntries/Sum**  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.59 NumberAndSumOfTransactions2

Definition: Set of elements providing the total sum of entries.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.45	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		106
2.46	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		106
2.47	TotalNetEntryAmount	<TtlNetNtryAmt>		[0..1]		106

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.48	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		106

**Guidelines****1. DebitCreditIndicatorGuideline**

DebitCreditIndicator should be present when TotalNetEntryAmount is present.

**Used in element(s)**

"TotalEntries" on page 166

## 4.59.1 NumberOfEntries

XML Tag: NbOfNtries

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual entries included in the report.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 236

## 4.59.2 Sum

XML Tag: Sum

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual entries included in the report.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 216

## 4.59.3 TotalNetEntryAmount

XML Tag: TtlNetNtryAmt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Resulting amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 216

## 4.59.4 CreditDebitIndicator

XML Tag: CdtDbtInd







Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the total net entry amount is a credit or a debit amount.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 216

## 4.60 OrganisationIdentification4

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.14 , 1.2.28	BICOrBEI	<BICOrBEI>		[0..1]		107
9.1.15 , 1.2.29	Other	<Othr>		[0..*]		107

**Used in element(s)**

"OrganisationIdentification" on page 109

## 4.60.1 BICOrBEI

XML Tag: BICOrBEI

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Code allocated to a financial institution or non financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

**Datatype:** "AnyBICIdentifier" on page 195







## 4.60.2 Other

XML Tag: Othr

Presence: [0..\*]

**Definition:** Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.







The **Othr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "GenericOrganisationIdentification1" on page 95 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.16 , 1.2.30	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		95
9.1.17 , 1.2.31	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		95
9.1.20 , 1.2.34	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		96

## 4.61 OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice

**Definition:** Sets of elements to identify a name of the organisation identification scheme.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.18 , 1.2.32	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		108
9.1.19 , 1.2.33	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		108

**Used in element(s)**

"SchemeName" on page 95

## 4.61.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 228

## 4.61.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.62 Pagination

*Definition:* Number used to sequence pages when it is not possible for data to be conveyed in a single message and the data has to be split across several pages (messages).

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
8.1.0	PageNumber	<PgNb>		[1..1]		108
8.1.1	LastPageIndicator	<LastPgInd>		[1..1]		109

**Used in element(s)**

"MessagePagination" on page 98

## 4.62.1 PageNumber

*XML Tag:* PgNb

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Page number.

*Datatype:* "Max5NumericText" on page 238

## 4.62.2 LastPageIndicator

*XML Tag:* LastPgInd







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the last page.

*Datatype:* "YesNoIndicator" on page 245

## 4.63 Party6Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.13 , 1.2.27	OrganisationIdentification	<OrgId>	{Or	[1..1]		109
9.1.21 , 1.2.35	PrivateIdentification	<PrvtId>	Or}	[1..1]		109

**Used in element(s)**

"Identification" on page 113







### 4.63.1 OrganisationIdentification

*XML Tag:* OrgId

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

The **OrgId** block contains the following elements (see datatype "OrganisationIdentification4" on page 106 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.14 , 1.2.28	BICOrBEI	<BICOrBEI>		[0..1]		107
9.1.15 , 1.2.29	Other	<Othr>		[0..*]		107







### 4.63.2 PrivateIdentification

*XML Tag:* PrvtId

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.







The **PrvtId** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PersonIdentification5" on page 114 for details)






 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.22 , 1.2.36	DateAndPlaceOfBirth	<DtAndPlcOfBirth>		[0..1]		115
9.1.27 , 1.2.41	Other	<Othr>		[0..*]		115

## 4.64 PartyIdentification32

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify a person or an organisation.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

### Used in element(s)

"Creditor" on page 183, "Debtor" on page 181, "InitiatingParty" on page 181, "Invoicee" on page 152, "Invoicer" on page 152, "MessageRecipient" on page 98, "Originator" on page 148, "Owner" on page 43, "Party" on page 125, "TradingParty" on page 184, "UltimateCreditor" on page 184, "UltimateDebtor" on page 182

### 4.64.1 Name

*XML Tag:* Nm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 235

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/Name

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/Name  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Ultimate-Creditor/Name  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateDebtor/Name  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*







## 4.64.2 PostalAddress





XML Tag: PstlAdr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

The **PstlAdr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PostalAddress6" on page 116 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.2 , 1.2.16 , 1.2.66 , 1.2.86 , 6.1.9 , 6.1.29 , 10.1.0	AddressType	<AdrTp>		[0..1]		118
9.1.3 , 1.2.17 , 1.2.67 , 1.2.87 , 6.1.10 , 6.1.30 , 10.1.1	Department	<Dept>		[0..1]		118
9.1.4 , 1.2.18 , 1.2.68 , 1.2.88 , 6.1.11 , 6.1.31 , 10.1.2	SubDepartment	<SubDept>		[0..1]		119
9.1.5 , 1.2.19 , 1.2.69 , 1.2.89 , 6.1.12 , 6.1.32 , 10.1.3	StreetName	<StrtNm>		[0..1]		119

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.6 , 1.2.20 , 1.2.70 , 1.2.90 , 6.1.13 , 6.1.33 , 10.1.4	BuildingNumber	<BldgNb>		[0..1]	!⊗	119
9.1.7 , 1.2.21 , 1.2.71 , 1.2.91 , 6.1.14 , 6.1.34 , 10.1.5	PostCode	<PstCd>		[0..1]	!⊗	120
9.1.8 , 1.2.22 , 1.2.72 , 1.2.92 , 6.1.15 , 6.1.35 , 10.1.6	TownName	<TwnNm>		[0..1]	!⊗	120
9.1.9 , 1.2.23 , 1.2.73 , 1.2.93 , 6.1.16 , 6.1.36 , 10.1.7	CountrySubDivision	<CtrySubDvsn>		[0..1]	!⊗	120
9.1.10 , 1.2.24 , 1.2.74 , 1.2.94 , 6.1.17 , 6.1.37 , 10.1.8	Country	<Ctry>		[0..1]	!⊗	121
9.1.11 , 1.2.25 , 1.2.75 , 1.2.95 , 6.1.18 , 6.1.38 , 10.1.9	AddressLine	<AdrLine>		[0..7]		121

!⊗ , !⊕ >> Note as not all **PstlAdr** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateCreditor/PostalAddress) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateDebtor/PostalAddress) is removed.



## 4.64.3 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

The **Id** block contains the following elements (see datatype "Party6Choice" on page 109 for details)

⊗ Removed - ⊗ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ▲ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.13 , 1.2.27	OrganisationIdentification	<OrgId>	{Or	[1..1]		109
9.1.21 , 1.2.35	PrivateIdentification	<PrvtId>	Or}	[1..1]		109

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/Identification) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateCreditor/Identification) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateDebtor/Identification) is removed.

## 4.64.4 CountryOfResidence

*XML Tag:* CtryOfRes

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 215

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/CountryOfResidence) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/CountryOfResidence) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateCreditor/CountryOfResidence) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateDebtor/CountryOfResidence) is removed.







## 4.64.5 ContactDetails

*XML Tag:* CtctDtls

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

The **CtctDtls** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ContactDetails2" on page 56 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.35 , 1.2.49	NamePrefix	<NmPrfx>		[0..1]		57
9.1.36 , 1.2.50	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		57
9.1.37 , 1.2.51	PhoneNumber	<PhneNb>		[0..1]		57
9.1.38 , 1.2.52	MobileNumber	<MobNb>		[0..1]		57
9.1.39 , 1.2.53	FaxNumber	<FaxNb>		[0..1]		58
9.1.40 , 1.2.54	EmailAddress	<EmailAdr>		[0..1]		58
9.1.41 , 1.2.55	Other	<Othr>		[0..1]		58

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/ContactDetails) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/ContactDetails) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateCreditor/ContactDetails) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/UltimateDebtor/ContactDetails) is removed.

## 4.65 PersonIdentification5

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.22 , 1.2.36	DateAndPlaceOfBirth	<DtAndPlcOfBirth>		[0..1]		115
9.1.27 , 1.2.41	Other	<Othr>		[0..*]		115

**Used in element(s)**

"PrivateIdentification" on page 109







## 4.65.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth

XML Tag: DtAndPlcOfBirth

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

The **DtAndPlcOfBirth** block contains the following elements (see datatype "DateAndPlaceOfBirth" on page 67 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.23 , 1.2.37	BirthDate	<BirthDt>		[1..1]		67
9.1.24 , 1.2.38	ProvinceOfBirth	<PrvcOfBirth>		[0..1]		67
9.1.25 , 1.2.39	CityOfBirth	<CityOfBirth>		[1..1]		67
9.1.26 , 1.2.40	CountryOfBirth	<CtryOfBirth>		[1..1]		67







## 4.65.2 Other

XML Tag: Othr

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

The **Othr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "GenericPersonIdentification1" on page 96 for details)







 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.28 , 1.2.42	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		96

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.29 , 1.2.43	SchemeName	<SchmeNm>		[0..1]		96
9.1.32 , 1.2.46	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		97

## 4.66 PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice

*Definition:* Sets of elements to identify a name of the identification scheme.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.30 , 1.2.44	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		116
9.1.31 , 1.2.45	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		116

**Used in element(s)**

"SchemeName" on page 96

### 4.66.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 229

### 4.66.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry







*Presence:* [1..1]


*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.67 PostalAddress6

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.2 , 1.2.16 ,	AddressType	<AdrTp>		[0..1]		118

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.66 , 1.2.86 , 6.1.9 , 6.1.29 , 10.1.0						
9.1.3 , 1.2.17 , 1.2.67 , 1.2.87 , 6.1.10 , 6.1.30 , 10.1.1	Department	<Dept>		[0..1]	!⊘	118
9.1.4 , 1.2.18 , 1.2.68 , 1.2.88 , 6.1.11 , 6.1.31 , 10.1.2	SubDepartment	<SubDept>		[0..1]	!⊘	119
9.1.5 , 1.2.19 , 1.2.69 , 1.2.89 , 6.1.12 , 6.1.32 , 10.1.3	StreetName	<StrtNm>		[0..1]	!⊘	119
9.1.6 , 1.2.20 , 1.2.70 , 1.2.90 , 6.1.13 , 6.1.33 , 10.1.4	BuildingNumber	<BldgNb>		[0..1]	!⊘	119
9.1.7 , 1.2.21 , 1.2.71 , 1.2.91 , 6.1.14 , 6.1.34 , 10.1.5	PostCode	<PstCd>		[0..1]	!⊘	120
9.1.8 , 1.2.22 , 1.2.72 , 1.2.92 , 6.1.15 , 6.1.35 , 10.1.6	TownName	<TwnNm>		[0..1]	!⊘	120
9.1.9 , 1.2.23 , 1.2.73 , 1.2.93 , 6.1.16 , 6.1.36 , 10.1.7	CountrySubDivision	<CtrySubDvsn>		[0..1]	!⊘	120
9.1.10 , 1.2.24 , 1.2.74 ,	Country	<Ctry>		[0..1]	!⊘	121

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.94 , 6.1.17 , 6.1.37 , 10.1.8						
9.1.11 , 1.2.25 , 1.2.75 , 1.2.95 , 6.1.18 , 6.1.38 , 10.1.9	AddressLine	<AdrLine>		[0..7]		121

⛔ , ⚠ >> Note as not all **PostalAddress6** blocks have this element removed and/or ignored. Please refer to the page number next to the element for further details on which elements have been removed and/or ignored.

#### Used in element(s)

"Address" on page 103, "PostalAddress" on page 38, "PostalAddress" on page 111, "PostalAddress" on page 87

## 4.67.1 AddressType

*XML Tag:* AdrTp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

*Datatype:* "AddressType2Code" on page 194

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/AddressType) is removed.
- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/AddressType) is removed.

## 4.67.2 Department

*XML Tag:* Dept

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 239

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/Department) is removed.

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/Department](#)) is removed.

### 4.67.3 SubDepartment

*XML Tag:* SubDept

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text"](#) on page 239

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/SubDepartment](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/SubDepartment](#)) is removed.

### 4.67.4 StreetName

*XML Tag:* StrtNm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text"](#) on page 239

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/StreetName](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/StreetName](#)) is removed.

### 4.67.5 BuildingNumber

*XML Tag:* BldgNb

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* ["Max16Text"](#) on page 236

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/BuildingNumber](#)) is removed.

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/BuildingNumber](#)) is removed.

## 4.67.6 PostCode

*XML Tag:* PstCd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* ["Max16Text" on page 236](#)

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/PostCode](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/PostCode](#)) is removed.

## 4.67.7 TownName

*XML Tag:* TwnNm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/TownName](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/TownName](#)) is removed.

## 4.67.8 CountrySubDivision

*XML Tag:* CtrySubDvsn

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/CountrySubDivision](#)) is removed.



- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/CountrySubDivision](#)) is removed.

## 4.67.9 Country

*XML Tag:* Ctry

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Nation with its own government.

*Datatype:* ["CountryCode"](#) on page 215

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Creditor/PostalAddress/Country](#)) is removed.
- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Debtor/PostalAddress/Country](#)) is removed.

## 4.67.10 AddressLine

*XML Tag:* AdrLine







*Presence:* [0..7]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text"](#) on page 239

## 4.68 ProprietaryAgent2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify a proprietary party.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.222	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		121
2.223	Agent	<Agt>		[1..1]		122

### Used in element(s)

["Proprietary"](#) on page 175

## 4.68.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary agent.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.68.2 Agent

XML Tag: Agt

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Organisation established primarily to provide financial services.

The **Agt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4" on page 35 for details)

Removed - 
 Partial Removed - 
 Ignored - 
 Partial Ignored - 
 Details below - 
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

## 4.69 ProprietaryBankTransactionCodeStructure1

Definition: Set of elements to fully identify a proprietary bank transaction code.

Removed - 
 Partial Removed - 
 Ignored - 
 Partial Ignored - 
 Details below - 
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.68 , 2.98 , 2.170 , 2.301	Code	<Cd>		[1..1]		122
2.69 , 2.99 , 2.171 , 2.302	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		123

Used in element(s)

"Proprietary" on page 30

### 4.69.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary bank transaction code to identify the underlying transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## Usage Guideline details

- **on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Proprietary/Code**
  - **HSBC\_Code:**

Code format depends on the issuer.  
E.g. if the Issuer is SWIFT, then the SWIFT transaction type code is reported in this field.  
For a detailed list please refer to your Integration Manager.
- **on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/BankTransaction-Code/Proprietary/Code**
  - **HSBC\_Code:**

Code format depends on the issuer.  
E.g. if the Issuer is SWIFT, then the SWIFT transaction type code is reported in this field.  
For a detailed list please refer to your Integration Manager

## 4.69.2 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the proprietary bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## Usage Guideline details

- **on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Proprietary/Issuer**

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- **on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/BankTransaction-Code/Proprietary/Issuer**







*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*
- **on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode/Proprietary/Issuer**
  - **HSBC\_Issuer:**

Issuer contains issuer code.  
E.g. BAI = BAI code, SWIFT = SWIFT code
- **on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/BankTransaction-Code/Proprietary/Issuer**
  - **HSBC\_Issuer:**

Issuer Code format depends on the issuer.  
E.g. BAI = BAI Code, SWIFT = SWIFT Code

## 4.70 ProprietaryDate2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify a proprietary date.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.275	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		124
2.276	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		124

Used in element(s)

"Proprietary" on page 178

## 4.70.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of date.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237







## 4.70.2 Date

*XML Tag:* Dt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date in ISO format.







The **Dt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "DateAndDateTimeChoice" on page 66 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
4.1.0	Date	<Dt>	{Or	[1..1]		66
4.1.1	DateTime	<DtTm>	Or}	[1..1]		66

## 4.71 ProprietaryParty2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify a proprietary party.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.209	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		125
2.210	Party	<Pty>		[1..1]		125

**Used in element(s)**

["Proprietary" on page 185](#)

## 4.71.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237







## 4.71.2 Party

*XML Tag:* Pty

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary party.







The **Pty** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["PartyIdentification32" on page 110](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

## 4.72 ProprietaryPrice2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify a proprietary price.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.280	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		126
2.281	Price	<Pric>		[1..1]		126

**Used in element(s)**

["Proprietary" on page 186](#)

## 4.72.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of price.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.72.2 Price

*XML Tag:* Pric







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.73 ProprietaryQuantity1

*Definition:* Set of elements to identify a proprietary quantity.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.285	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		126
2.286	Quantity	<Qty>		[1..1]		126

**Used in element(s)**

"Proprietary" on page 187

## 4.73.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of proprietary quantity reported.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.73.2 Quantity

*XML Tag:* Qty







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the proprietary quantity in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.74 ProprietaryReference1

*Definition:* Set of elements to identify a proprietary reference.

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.154	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		127
2.155	Reference	<Ref>		[1..1]		127

Used in element(s)

"Proprietary" on page 192

## 4.74.1 Type

XML Tag: Tp

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the type of reference reported.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.74.2 Reference

XML Tag: Ref

Presence: [1..1]







Definition: Proprietary reference specification related to the underlying transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.75 Purpose2Choice

Definition: Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.225	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		127
2.226	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		128

Used in element(s)

"Purpose" on page 79

## 4.75.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 229](#)

## 4.75.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.76 Rate3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.17 , 2.129 , 2.193	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		128
2.20 , 2.132 , 2.196	ValidityRange	<VldtyRg>		[0..1]		129

**Used in element(s)**

"Rate" on page 10, "Rate" on page 179







### 4.76.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["RateType4Choice" on page 129](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.18 , 2.130 , 2.194	Percentage	<Pctg>	{Or	[1..1]		129
2.19 , 2.131 , 2.195	Other	<Othr>	Or}	[1..1]		129









## 4.76.2 ValidityRange

XML Tag: VldtyRg

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.







The **VldtyRg** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CurrencyAndAmountRange2" on page 63 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
3.1.0	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		63
3.1.16	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		63
3.1.17	Currency	<Ccy>		[1..1]		64

## 4.77 RateType4Choice

Definition: Specifies the rate as a percentage or a text.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.18 , 2.130 , 2.194	Percentage	<Pctg>	{Or	[1..1]		129
2.19 , 2.131 , 2.195	Other	<Othr>	Or}	[1..1]		129

Used in element(s)

"Type" on page 128

### 4.77.1 Percentage

XML Tag: Pctg

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Ratio of the amount of interest paid during a certain period of time compared to the principal amount of the interest bearing financial instrument.

Datatype: "PercentageRate" on page 240

### 4.77.2 Other

XML Tag: Othr







Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Rate type expressed, in an other form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.78 ReferredDocumentInformation3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the documents referred to in the remittance information.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.238	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		130
2.243	Number	<Nb>		[0..1]		130
2.244	RelatedDate	<RltdDt>		[0..1]		130

Used in element(s)

["ReferredDocumentInformation" on page 151](#)







### 4.78.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["ReferredDocumentType2" on page 131](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.239	CodeOrProprietary	<CdOrPrtry>		[1..1]		132
2.242	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		132

### 4.78.2 Number

*XML Tag:* Nb

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.78.3 RelatedDate

*XML Tag:* RltdDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.79 ReferredDocumentType1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the document referred in the remittance information.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.240	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		131
2.241	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		131

**Used in element(s)**

"CodeOrProprietary" on page 132

### 4.79.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType5Code" on page 218

### 4.79.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.80 ReferredDocumentType2

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the document referred in the remittance information.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.239	CodeOrProprietary	<CdOrPrtry>		[1..1]		132
2.242	Issuer	<Issr>		[0..1]		132

**Used in element(s)**

"Type" on page 130







## 4.80.1 CodeOrProprietary

*XML Tag:* CdOrPrtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document.

The **CdOrPrtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ReferredDocumentType1Choice" on page 131 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.240	Code	<Cd>	{Or}	[1..1]		131
2.241	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		131

## 4.80.2 Issuer

*XML Tag:* Issr







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.81 RemittanceAmount1

*Definition:* Nature of the amount and currency on a document referred to in the remittance section, typically either the original amount due/payable or the amount actually remitted for the referenced document.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.246	DuePayableAmount	<DuePyblAmt>		[0..1]		132
2.247	DiscountAppliedAmount	<DscntApldAmt>		[0..1]		133
2.248	CreditNoteAmount	<CdtNoteAmt>		[0..1]		133
2.249	TaxAmount	<TaxAmt>		[0..1]		133
2.250	AdjustmentAmountAndReason	<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>		[0..*]		133
2.255	RemittedAmount	<RmtdAmt>		[0..1]		134

**Used in element(s)**

"ReferredDocumentAmount" on page 151

### 4.81.1 DuePayableAmount

*XML Tag:* DuePyblAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

## 4.81.2 DiscountAppliedAmount

*XML Tag:* DscntApldAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that results from the application of an agreed discount to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

## 4.81.3 CreditNoteAmount

*XML Tag:* CdtNoteAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of a credit note.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

## 4.81.4 TaxAmount

*XML Tag:* TaxAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of cash resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)







## 4.81.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason

*XML Tag:* AdjstmntAmtAndRsn

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

The **AdjstmntAmtAndRsn** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["DocumentAdjustment1" on page 69](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.251	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		69
2.252	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		69
2.253	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		70
2.254	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..1]		70

## 4.81.6 RemittedAmount

XML Tag: RmtdAmt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.82 RemittanceInformation5

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Removed - 
 Partial Removed - 
 Ignored - 
 Partial Ignored - 
 Details below - 
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.235	Unstructured	<Ustrd>		[0..*]		134
2.236	Structured	<Strd>		[0..*]		134

Used in element(s)

"RemittanceInformation" on page 80

### 4.82.1 Unstructured

XML Tag: Ustrd

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 235

Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Unstructured

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Unstructured

**Comment:**

Remittance information will be provided in this field.

For Swiss QRR payments this field will contain the QR or ISO code and additional remittance information.

### 4.82.2 Structured

*XML Tag:* Strd

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

The **Strd** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[StructuredRemittanceInformation7](#)" on page 150 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.237	ReferredDocumentInformation	<RfrdDocInf>		[0..*]		151
2.245	ReferredDocumentAmount	<RfrdDocAmt>		[0..1]		151
2.256	CreditorReferenceInformation	<CdtrRefInf>		[0..1]		151
2.263	Invoicer	<Invcr>		[0..1]		152
2.264	Invoicee	<Invcee>		[0..1]		152
2.265	AdditionalRemittanceInformation	<AddtlRmtInf>		[0..3]	⚠	153

#### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured

**Comment:**

For Swiss QR bill payments this field will contain the QR code or ISO Code in this section.

## 4.83 RemittanceLocation2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the remittance advice.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.228	RemittanceIdentification	<RmtId>		[0..1]		136
2.229	RemittanceLocationMethod	<RmtLctnMtd>		[0..1]		136
2.230	RemittanceLocationElectronicAddress	<RmtLctnElctrncAdr>		[0..1]		136
2.231	RemittanceLocationPostalAddress	<RmtLctnPstlAdr>		[0..1]		136

#### Used in element(s)

"[RelatedRemittanceInformation](#)" on page 79

## 4.83.1 RemittanceIdentification

*XML Tag:* RmtId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the remittance information sent separately from the payment instruction, such as a remittance advice.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.83.2 RemittanceLocationMethod

*XML Tag:* RmtLctnMtd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

*Datatype:* ["RemittanceLocationMethod2Code" on page 241](#)

## 4.83.3 RemittanceLocationElectronicAddress

*XML Tag:* RmtLctnElctrncAdr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

*Datatype:* ["Max2048Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.83.4 RemittanceLocationPostalAddress

*XML Tag:* RmtLctnPstlAdr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Postal address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

The **RmtLctnPstlAdr** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["NameAndAddress10" on page 102](#) for details)

❌ Removed - 
 ❌ Partial Removed - 
 ❖ Ignored - 
 ❖ Partial Ignored - 
 ⚠ Details below - 
 M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]


















Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.232	Name	<Nm>		[1..1]		103
2.233	Address	<Adr>		[1..1]		103

## 4.84 ReportEntry2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on an entry in the report.

❌ Removed - 
 ❌ Partial Removed - 
 ❖ Ignored - 
 ❖ Partial Ignored - 
 ⚠ Details below - 
 M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.77	EntryReference	<NtryRef>		[0..1]	 	137
2.78	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		138
2.79	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		138
2.80	ReversalIndicator	<RvslInd>		[0..1]		138
2.81	Status	<Sts>		[1..1]		138
2.82	BookingDate	<BookgDt>		[0..1]		139
2.83	ValueDate	<ValDt>		[0..1]		139
2.84	AccountServicerReference	<AcctSvcrRef>		[0..1]	 	140
2.85	Availability	<Avlbtty>		[0..*]		140
2.91	BankTransactionCode	<BkTxCd>		[1..1]		141
2.100	CommissionWaiverIndicator	<ComssnWvrInd>		[0..1]		141
2.101	AdditionalInformationIndicator	<AddtlInfInd>		[0..1]		142
2.104	AmountDetails	<AmtDtls>		[0..1]		142
2.105	Charges	<Chrgs>		[0..*]		143
2.119	TechnicalInputChannel	<TechInptChanl>		[0..1]		144
2.122	Interest	<Intrst>		[0..*]		144
2.135	EntryDetails	<NtryDtls>		[0..*]		145
2.314	AdditionalEntryInformation	<AddtlNtryInf>		[0..1]		145

## Guidelines

### 1. ReferenceGuideline

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

## Used in element(s)

"Entry" on page 17

## 4.84.1 EntryReference

*XML Tag:* NtryRef

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference for the entry.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryReference

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryReference**

- **HSBC\_EntryReference:**

Entry Reference is the reference assigned by the bank and is same as the Account Servicer Reference. If the reference is not provided then 'NOT PROVIDED' is reported in the reference

## 4.84.2 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash entry.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.84.3 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216

## 4.84.4 ReversalIndicator

*XML Tag:* RvslInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

*Usage:* This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

*Datatype:* "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 244

### Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/ReversalIndicator**

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.84.5 Status

*XML Tag:* Sts

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "EntryStatus2Code" on page 220

## 4.84.6 BookingDate







*XML Tag:* BookgDt


*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

Usage: Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

The **BookgDt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "DateAndDateTimeChoice" on page 66 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
4.1.0	Date	<Dt>	{Or	[1..1]		66
4.1.1	DateTime	<DtTm>	Or}	[1..1]		66

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BookingDate

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.84.7 ValueDate

*XML Tag:* ValDt







*Presence:* [0..1]


*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

Usage: If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

The **ValDt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "DateAndDateTimeChoice" on page 66 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
4.1.0	Date	<Dt>	{Or	[1..1]		66
4.1.1	DateTime	<DtTm>	Or}	[1..1]		66

**Usage Guideline details**

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/ValueDate

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.84.8 AccountServicerReference

XML Tag: AcctSvcrRef

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

**Datatype:** "Max35Text" on page 237

**Usage Guideline details**

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/AccountServicerReference

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/AccountServicerReference

- **HSBC\_AccountServicerReference:**

If Account Servicer Reference is not provided , the value 'NOT PROVIDED' will be populated

## 4.84.9 Availability

XML Tag: Avlbty







Presence: [0..\*]

**Definition:** Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

**Usage:** This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

**Example:** When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

The **Avlbty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CashBalanceAvailability2](#)" on page 48 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.38 , 2.71 , 2.86 , 2.158	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		49
2.41 , 2.74 , 2.89 , 2.161	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		49
2.42 , 2.75 , 2.90 , 2.162	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		49

## Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/Availability) is removed.







## 4.84.10 BankTransactionCode


XML Tag: BkTxCd

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

The **BkTxCd** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BankTransactionCodeStructure4](#)" on page 28 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.62 , 2.92 , 2.164 , 2.295	Domain	<Domn>		[0..1]		29
2.67 , 2.97 , 2.169 , 2.300	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		30

## Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/BankTransactionCode

**Comment:**

Please note that Bank Transaction Code can be provided in the proprietary format and in ISO format.

## 4.84.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator

*XML Tag:* ComssnWvrlnd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

*Datatype:* "YesNoIndicator" on page 245

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/CommissionWaiverIndicator](#)) is removed.







## 4.84.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator

*XML Tag:* AddtlInflnd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

The **AddtlInflnd** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[MessageIdentification2](#)" on page 102 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.102	MessageNameIdentification	<MsgNmId>		[0..1]		102
2.103	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[0..1]		102

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/AdditionalInformationIndicator](#)) is removed.

## 4.84.13 AmountDetails







*XML Tag:* AmtDtls

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements providing information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

The **AmtDtls** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[AmountAndCurrencyExchange3](#)" on page 18 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.1.0	InstructedAmount	<InstdAmt>		[0..1]		19
2.1.9	TransactionAmount	<TxAmt>		[0..1]		20
2.1.18	CounterValueAmount	<CntrValAmt>		[0..1]		20
2.1.27	AnnouncedPostingAmount	<AnncdPstngAmt>		[0..1]		21
2.1.36	ProprietaryAmount	<PrtryAmt>		[0..*]		21

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/AmountDetails) is removed.

## 4.84.14 Charges







*XML Tag:* Chrgs

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides information on the charges included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

The **Chrgs** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ChargesInformation6" on page 51 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - 
 R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.106 , 2.173	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount	<TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>		[0..1]		52
2.107 , 2.174	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		52
2.108 , 2.175	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		53
2.109 , 2.176	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		53
2.112 , 2.179	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]		53
2.113 , 2.180	Bearer	 		[0..1]		53
2.114 , 2.181	Party	<Pty>		[0..1]		54
2.115 , 2.182	Tax	<Tax>		[0..1]		54

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/Charges](#)) is removed.

## 4.84.15 TechnicalInputChannel

*XML Tag:* TechInptChanl

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

The **TechInptChanl** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TechnicalInputChannel1Choice](#)" on page 165 for details)

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ❖ Ignored - ❖ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.120	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		165
2.121	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		166

## Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/TechnicalInputChannel](#)) is removed.

## 4.84.16 Interest

*XML Tag:* Intrst

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

The **Intrst** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TransactionInterest2](#)" on page 178 for details)

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ❖ Ignored - ❖ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.123 , 2.187	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		178
2.124 , 2.188	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		179
2.125 , 2.189	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		179
2.128 , 2.192	Rate	<Rate>		[0..*]		179



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.133 , 2.197	FromDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		180
2.134 , 2.198	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		180

**Usage Guideline details**

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/Interest) is removed.







## 4.84.17 EntryDetails




XML Tag: NtryDtls

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the entry.

The **NtryDtls** block contains the following elements (see datatype "EntryDetails1" on page 70 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.136	Batch	<Btch>		[0..1]		70
2.142	TransactionDetails	<TxDtls>		[0..*]	 	71

**Usage Guideline details**

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails
  - HSBC\_EntryDetails:

Entry Details are reported for batched and de-batched / itemised statements

## 4.84.18 AdditionalEntryInformation

XML Tag: AddtlNtryInf

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the entry.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 238







**Usage Guideline details**

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/AdditionalEntryInformation

This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1

## 4.85 ReportingSource1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the source used to generate the reporting.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.8	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		146
2.9	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		146

**Used in element(s)**

"ReportingSource" on page 14

### 4.85.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalReportingSource1Code" on page 230

### 4.85.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry







*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reporting source, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.86 ReturnReason5Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the return of the transaction.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.305	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		146
2.306	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		147

**Used in element(s)**

"Reason" on page 148

### 4.86.1 Code

*XML Tag:* Cd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the return, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalReturnReason1Code" on page 231](#)

## 4.86.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the return, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

## 4.87 ReturnReasonInformation10

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the reason of the return of the transaction.

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
 M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.294	OriginalBankTransactionCode	<OrgnlBkTxCd>		[0..1]	⊘	147
2.303	Originator	<Orgtr>		[0..1]	⊘	148
2.304	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]	M	148
2.307	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..*]	⊘	149

### Rules

#### R10 ReturnReasonRule ✓

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00077
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for additional return reason.

### Used in element(s)

["ReturnInformation" on page 83](#)

## 4.87.1 OriginalBankTransactionCode

*XML Tag:* OrgnlBkTxCd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Bank transaction code included in the original entry for the transaction.

The **OrgnlBkTxCd** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 28](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.62 , 2.92 , 2.164 , 2.295	Domain	<Domn>		[0..1]		29
2.67 , 2.97 , 2.169 , 2.300	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		30

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/ReturnInformation/OriginalBankTransactionCode) is removed.







## 4.87.2 Originator

XML Tag: Orgtr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the return.

The **Orgtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/ReturnInformation/Originator) is removed.







## 4.87.3 Reason

XML Tag: Rsn

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the return.

The **Rsn** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["ReturnReason5Choice"](#) on page 146 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.305	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		146
2.306	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		147

#### Usage Guideline details

- on [camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/ReturnInformation/Reason](#)

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.87.4 AdditionalInformation

XML Tag: AddtlInf

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Further details on the return reason.







Datatype: ["Max105Text"](#) on page 235

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/ReturnInformation/AdditionalInformation](#)) is removed.

## 4.88 SecurityIdentification4Choice

Definition: Choice between formats for the identification of a financial instrument.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.288	ISIN	<ISIN>	{Or	[1..1]		150
2.289	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		150

#### Used in element(s)

["FinancialInstrumentIdentification"](#) on page 82

## 4.88.1 ISIN

*XML Tag:* ISIN

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

*Datatype:* "ISINIdentifier" on page 233







## 4.88.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of an underlying financial instrument.







The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "AlternateSecurityIdentification2" on page 18 for details)


 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.290	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		18
2.291	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		18

## 4.89 StructuredRemittanceInformation7

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.237	ReferredDocumentInformation	<RfrdDocInf>		[0..*]		151
2.245	ReferredDocumentAmount	<RfrdDocAmt>		[0..1]		151
2.256	CreditorReferenceInformation	<CdtrRefInf>		[0..1]		151
2.263	Invoicer	<Invcr>		[0..1]		152
2.264	Invoicee	<Invcee>		[0..1]		152
2.265	AdditionalRemittanceInformation	<AddtlRmtInf>		[0..3]		153

Used in element(s)

"Structured" on page 134







## 4.89.1 ReferredDocumentInformation

XML Tag: RfrdDocInf

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the documents referred to in the remittance information.

The **RfrdDocInf** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ReferredDocumentInformation3" on page 130 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.238	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		130
2.243	Number	<Nb>		[0..1]		130
2.244	RelatedDate	<RltdDt>		[0..1]		130







## 4.89.2 ReferredDocumentAmount

XML Tag: RfrdDocAmt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the amounts of the referred document.

The **RfrdDocAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "RemittanceAmount1" on page 132 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.246	DuePayableAmount	<DuePyblAmt>		[0..1]		132
2.247	DiscountAppliedAmount	<DscntApldAmt>		[0..1]		133
2.248	CreditNoteAmount	<CdtNoteAmt>		[0..1]		133
2.249	TaxAmount	<TaxAmt>		[0..1]		133
2.250	AdjustmentAmountAndReason	<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>		[0..*]		133
2.255	RemittedAmount	<RmtdAmt>		[0..1]		134

## 4.89.3 CreditorReferenceInformation

XML Tag: CdtrRefInf

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

The **CdtrRefInf** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CreditorReferenceInformation2](#)" on page 60 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.257	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		60
2.262	Reference	<Ref>		[0..1]	⚠	60

## 4.89.4 Invoicer

*XML Tag:* Invcr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

The **Invcr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

## 4.89.5 Invoicee

*XML Tag:* Invcee

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

The **Invcee** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

## 4.89.6 AdditionalRemittanceInformation

*XML Tag:* AddtlRmtInf

*Presence:* [0..3]

*Definition:* Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 235

### Usage Guideline details







- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/AdditionalRemittanceInformation

#### Comment:

For Swiss QR bill payments additional remittance information can be provided by your customer, any such information will be populated in this field.

## 4.90 TaxAmount1

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the tax amount(s) of tax record.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.32	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]		153
13.1.33	TaxableBaseAmount	<TaxblBaseAmt>		[0..1]		154
13.1.34	TotalAmount	<TtlAmt>		[0..1]		154
13.1.35	Details	<Dtls>		[0..*]		154

**Used in element(s)**

"TaxAmount" on page 164

### 4.90.1 Rate

*XML Tag:* Rate

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 240](#)

## 4.90.2 TaxableBaseAmount

*XML Tag:* TaxblBaseAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

## 4.90.3 TotalAmount

*XML Tag:* TtlAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)







## 4.90.4 Details

*XML Tag:* Dtls

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.







The **Dtls** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["TaxRecordDetails1" on page 164](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.36	Period	<Prd>		[0..1]		165
13.1.42	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		165

## 4.91 TaxAuthorisation1

*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.9	Title	<Titl>		[0..1]		155
13.1.10	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		155

**Used in element(s)**

"Authorisation" on page 160

## 4.91.1 Title

*XML Tag:* Titl

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.91.2 Name

*XML Tag:* Nm







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 235

## 4.92 TaxCharges2

*Definition:* Amount of money due to the government or tax authority, according to various pre-defined parameters such as thresholds or income.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.116 , 2.183	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		155
2.117 , 2.184	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]		155
2.118 , 2.185	Amount	<Amt>		[0..1]		156

**Used in element(s)**

"Tax" on page 54

### 4.92.1 Identification

*XML Tag:* Id

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.92.2 Rate

*XML Tag:* Rate

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 240](#)

## 4.92.3 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

## 4.93 TaxInformation3

*Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.0	Creditor	<Cdtr>		[0..1]		156
13.1.4	Debtor	<Dbtr>		[0..1]		157
13.1.11	AdministrationZone	<AdmstnZn>		[0..1]		157
13.1.12	ReferenceNumber	<RefNb>		[0..1]		157
13.1.13	Method	<Mtd>		[0..1]		157
13.1.14	TotalTaxableBaseAmount	<TtlTaxblBaseAmt>		[0..1]		158
13.1.15	TotalTaxAmount	<TtlTaxAmt>		[0..1]		158
13.1.16	Date	<Dt>		[0..1]		158
13.1.17	SequenceNumber	<SeqNb>		[0..1]		158
13.1.18	Record	<Rcrd>		[0..*]		158

**Used in element(s)**

["Tax" on page 82](#)







### 4.93.1 Creditor

*XML Tag:* Cdtr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

The **Cdtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["TaxParty1" on page 159](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.1	TaxIdentification	<TaxId>		[0..1]		159
13.1.2	RegistrationIdentification	<RegnId>		[0..1]		159
13.1.3	TaxType	<TaxTp>		[0..1]		159







## 4.93.2 Debtor

XML Tag: Dbtr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

The **Dbtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 160 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.5	TaxIdentification	<TaxId>		[0..1]		160
13.1.6	RegistrationIdentification	<RegnId>		[0..1]		160
13.1.7	TaxType	<TaxTp>		[0..1]		160
13.1.8	Authorisation	<Authstn>		[0..1]		160

## 4.93.3 AdministrationZone

XML Tag: AdmstnZn

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 237

## 4.93.4 ReferenceNumber

XML Tag: RefNb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

Datatype: "[Max140Text](#)" on page 235

## 4.93.5 Method

XML Tag: Mtd

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 237

## 4.93.6 TotalTaxableBaseAmount

*XML Tag:* TtlTaxblBaseAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.93.7 TotalTaxAmount

*XML Tag:* TtlTaxAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.93.8 Date

*XML Tag:* Dt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.93.9 SequenceNumber

*XML Tag:* SeqNb

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 240







## 4.93.10 Record

*XML Tag:* Rcrd

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

The **Rcrd** block contains the following elements (see datatype "TaxRecord1" on page 162 for details)







 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.19	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		162
13.1.20	Category	<Ctgy>		[0..1]		162
13.1.21	CategoryDetails	<CtgyDtls>		[0..1]		163
13.1.22	DebtorStatus	<DbtrSts>		[0..1]		163

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.23	CertificateIdentification	<CertId>		[0..1]		163
13.1.24	FormsCode	<FrmsCd>		[0..1]		163
13.1.25	Period	<Prd>		[0..1]		163
13.1.31	TaxAmount	<TaxAmt>		[0..1]		164
13.1.43	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..1]		164

## 4.94 TaxParty1

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.1	TaxIdentification	<TaxId>		[0..1]		159
13.1.2	RegistrationIdentification	<RegnId>		[0..1]		159
13.1.3	TaxType	<TaxTp>		[0..1]		159

**Used in element(s)**

"Creditor" on page 156

### 4.94.1 TaxIdentification

*XML Tag:* TaxId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the creditor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.94.2 RegistrationIdentification

*XML Tag:* RegnId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.94.3 TaxType

*XML Tag:* TaxTp







*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.95 TaxParty2

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.5	TaxIdentification	<TaxId>		[0..1]		160
13.1.6	RegistrationIdentification	<RegnId>		[0..1]		160
13.1.7	TaxType	<TaxTp>		[0..1]		160
13.1.8	Authorisation	<Authstn>		[0..1]		160

**Used in element(s)**

"Debtor" on page 157

### 4.95.1 TaxIdentification

*XML Tag:* TaxId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the debtor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.95.2 RegistrationIdentification

*XML Tag:* RegnId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.95.3 TaxType

*XML Tag:* TaxTp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

### 4.95.4 Authorisation







*XML Tag:* Authstn

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.









The **Authstn** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[TaxAuthorisation1](#)" on page 154 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.9	Title	<Titl>		[0..1]		155
13.1.10	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		155

## 4.96 TaxPeriod1

*Definition:* Period of time details related to the tax payment.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.26 , 13.1.37	Year	<Yr>		[0..1]		161
13.1.27 , 13.1.38	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		161
13.1.28 , 13.1.39	FromToDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		161

**Used in element(s)**

"Period" on page 165, "Period" on page 163

### 4.96.1 Year

*XML Tag:* Yr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Year related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 233

### 4.96.2 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "[TaxRecordPeriod1Code](#)" on page 242







### 4.96.3 FromToDate

*XML Tag:* FrToDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.







The **FrToDt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[DatePeriodDetails](#)" on page 68 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.29 , 13.1.40	FromDate	<FrDt>		[1..1]		68
13.1.30 , 13.1.41	ToDate	<ToDt>		[1..1]		68

## 4.97 TaxRecord1

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the tax record.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.19	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		162
13.1.20	Category	<Ctgy>		[0..1]		162
13.1.21	CategoryDetails	<CtgyDtls>		[0..1]		163
13.1.22	DebtorStatus	<DbtrSts>		[0..1]		163
13.1.23	CertificateIdentification	<CertId>		[0..1]		163
13.1.24	FormsCode	<FrmsCd>		[0..1]		163
13.1.25	Period	<Prd>		[0..1]		163
13.1.31	TaxAmount	<TaxAmt>		[0..1]		164
13.1.43	AdditionalInformation	<AddtlInf>		[0..1]		164

**Used in element(s)**

["Record"](#) on page 158

### 4.97.1 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* High level code to identify the type of tax details.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 237

### 4.97.2 Category

*XML Tag:* Ctgy

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.97.3 CategoryDetails

*XML Tag:* CtgDtls

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details of the category tax code.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.97.4 DebtorStatus

*XML Tag:* DbtrSts

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.97.5 CertificateIdentification

*XML Tag:* CertId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)

### 4.97.6 FormsCode

*XML Tag:* FrmsCd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 237](#)







### 4.97.7 Period

*XML Tag:* Prd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

The **Prd** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["TaxPeriod1" on page 161](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.26 , 13.1.37	Year	<Yr>		[0..1]		161
13.1.27 , 13.1.38	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		161
13.1.28 , 13.1.39	FromToDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		161







## 4.97.8 TaxAmount

XML Tag: TaxAmt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

The **TaxAmt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "TaxAmount1" on page 153 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.32	Rate	<Rate>		[0..1]		153
13.1.33	TaxableBaseAmount	<TaxblBaseAmt>		[0..1]		154
13.1.34	TotalAmount	<TtlAmt>		[0..1]		154
13.1.35	Details	<Dtls>		[0..*]		154

## 4.97.9 AdditionalInformation

XML Tag: AddtlInf







Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the tax record.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 235

## 4.98 TaxRecordDetails1

Definition: Provides information on the individual tax amount(s) per period of the tax record.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.36	Period	<Prd>		[0..1]		165
13.1.42	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		165

Used in element(s)

["Details" on page 154](#)







## 4.98.1 Period

XML Tag: Prd

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

The **Prd** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["TaxPeriod1" on page 161](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
13.1.26 , 13.1.37	Year	<Yr>		[0..1]		161
13.1.27 , 13.1.38	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		161
13.1.28 , 13.1.39	FromDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		161

## 4.98.2 Amount

XML Tag: Amt







Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193](#)

## 4.99 TechnicalInputChannel1Choice

Definition: Specifies the technical input channel.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.120	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		165
2.121	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		166

Used in element(s)

["TechnicalInputChannel" on page 144](#)

## 4.99.1 Code

XML Tag: Cd

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 232

## 4.99.2 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.100 TotalTransactions2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide summary information on entries.

⊘ Removed - !⊘ Partial Removed - ♦ Ignored - !♦ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.44	TotalEntries	<TtlNtries>		[0..1]	⊘	166
2.49	TotalCreditEntries	<TtlCdtNtries>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	167
2.52	TotalDebitEntries	<TtlDbtNtries>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	167
2.55	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode	<TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>		[0..*]	⊘	168

Used in element(s)

"TransactionsSummary" on page 16

### 4.100.1 TotalEntries

*XML Tag:* TtlNtries

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of debit and credit entries.

The **TtlNtries** block contains the following elements (see datatype "NumberAndSumOfTransactions2" on page 105 for details)

⊘ Removed - !⊘ Partial Removed - ♦ Ignored - !♦ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.45	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		106
2.46	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		106
2.47	TotalNetEntryAmount	<TtlNetNtryAmt>		[0..1]		106
2.48	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		106

## Usage Guideline details

- This element(**camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalEntries**) is removed.







## 4.100.2 TotalCreditEntries



XML Tag: TtlCdtNtries

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the total number and sum of credit entries.

The **TtlCdtNtries** block contains the following elements (see datatype "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 104 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.50 , 2.53	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		105
2.51 , 2.54	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		105

## Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalCreditEntries**  
*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*







## 4.100.3 TotalDebitEntries



XML Tag: TtlDbtNtries

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the total number and sum of debit entries.

The **TtlDbtNtries** block contains the following elements (see datatype "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 104 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.50 , 2.53	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		105
2.51 , 2.54	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		105

## Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalDebitEntries**

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

## 4.100.4 TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode

*XML Tag:* TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of entries per bank transaction code.

The **TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd** block contains the following elements (see datatype "TotalsPerBankTransactionCode2" on page 168 for details)

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ❖ Ignored - ❖ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.56	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		169
2.57	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		169
2.58	TotalNetEntryAmount	<TtlNetNtryAmt>		[0..1]		169
2.59	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		169
2.60	ForecastIndicator	<FcstInd>		[0..1]		169
2.61	BankTransactionCode	<BkTxCd>		[1..1]		170
2.70	Availability	<AvlbtY>		[0..*]		170

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/TransactionsSummary/TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode) is removed.

## 4.101 TotalsPerBankTransactionCode2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the total sum of entries per bank transaction code.

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ❖ Ignored - ❖ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.56	NumberOfEntries	<NbOfNtries>		[0..1]		169
2.57	Sum	<Sum>		[0..1]		169
2.58	TotalNetEntryAmount	<TtlNetNtryAmt>		[0..1]		169
2.59	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[0..1]		169
2.60	ForecastIndicator	<FcstInd>		[0..1]		169



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.61	BankTransactionCode	<BkTxCd>		[1..1]		170
2.70	Availability	<Avlbtty>		[0..*]		170

#### Guidelines

##### 1. CreditDebitIndicatorGuideline

If TotalNetEntryAmount is present, then CreditDebitIndicator should be present.

#### Used in element(s)

"TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode" on page 168

## 4.101.1 NumberOfEntries

*XML Tag:* NbOfNtries

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries for the bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 236

## 4.101.2 Sum

*XML Tag:* Sum

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 216

## 4.101.3 TotalNetEntryAmount

*XML Tag:* TtlNetNtryAmt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount that is the result of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries per bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 216

## 4.101.4 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the total net entry amount is a credit or a debit amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216

## 4.101.5 ForecastIndicator

*XML Tag:* FcstInd

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the bank transaction code is related to booked or forecast items.

*Datatype:* ["TrueFalseIndicator" on page 244](#)







## 4.101.6 BankTransactionCode

*XML Tag:* BkTxCd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

The **BkTxCd** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 28](#) for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.62 , 2.92 , 2.164 , 2.295	Domain	<Domn>		[0..1]		29
2.67 , 2.97 , 2.169 , 2.300	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		30







## 4.101.7 Availability

*XML Tag:* Avlbty

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.







The **Avlbty** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["CashBalanceAvailability2" on page 48](#) for details)









 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.38 , 2.71 , 2.86 , 2.158	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		49
2.41 , 2.74 , 2.89 , 2.161	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		49
2.42 , 2.75 , 2.90 , 2.162	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		49

## 4.102 TransactionAgents2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the agents specific to the individual transaction.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.212	DebtorAgent	<DbtrAgt>		[0..1]		171
2.213	CreditorAgent	<CdtrAgt>		[0..1]		171
2.214	IntermediaryAgent1	<IntrmyAgt1>		[0..1]		172
2.215	IntermediaryAgent2	<IntrmyAgt2>		[0..1]		172
2.216	IntermediaryAgent3	<IntrmyAgt3>		[0..1]		173
2.217	ReceivingAgent	<RcvgAgt>		[0..1]		173
2.218	DeliveringAgent	<DlvrAgt>		[0..1]		174
2.219	IssuingAgent	<IssgAgt>		[0..1]		174
2.220	SettlementPlace	<SttlmPlc>		[0..1]		175
2.221	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..*]		175

Used in element(s)

"RelatedAgents" on page 78







### 4.102.1 DebtorAgent

XML Tag: DbtrAgt

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

The **DbtrAgt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4" on page 35 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

### 4.102.2 CreditorAgent

XML Tag: CdtrAgt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

The **CdtrAgt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]	🚫	36

## 4.102.3 IntermediaryAgent1

*XML Tag:* IntrmyAgt1

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If more than one intermediary agent is present, then IntermediaryAgent1 identifies the agent between the DebtorAgent and the IntermediaryAgent2.

The **IntrmyAgt1** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/IntermediaryAgent1](#)) is removed.

## 4.102.4 IntermediaryAgent2

*XML Tag:* IntrmyAgt2

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If more than two intermediary agents are present, then IntermediaryAgent2 identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent1 and the IntermediaryAgent3.

The **IntrmyAgt2** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/IntermediaryAgent2](#)) is removed.

## 4.102.5 IntermediaryAgent3

XML Tag: IntrmyAgt3

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If IntermediaryAgent3 is present, then it identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent 2 and the CreditorAgent.

The **IntrmyAgt3** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/IntermediaryAgent3](#)) is removed.

## 4.102.6 ReceivingAgent

XML Tag: RcvgAgt

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that receives securities from the delivering agent at the place of settlement, such as central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

The **RcvgAgt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/ReceivingAgent](#)) is removed.

## 4.102.7 DeliveringAgent

*XML Tag:* DlvrAgt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that delivers securities to the receiving agent at the place of settlement, such as a central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

The **DlvrAgt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/DeliveringAgent](#)) is removed.







## 4.102.8 IssuingAgent

*XML Tag:* IssgAgt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity that has the right to issue securities.

The **IssgAgt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/IssuingAgent](#)) is removed.

## 4.102.9 SettlementPlace







*XML Tag:* SttlmPlc

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Place where settlement of the securities takes place.

Usage: This is typed by a financial institution identification as this is the standard way to identify a securities settlement agent/central system.

The **SttlmPlc** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification4](#)" on page 35 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.2.57 , 6.1.0	FinancialInstitutionIdentification	<FinInstnId>		[1..1]		36
1.2.82 , 6.1.25	BranchIdentification	<BrnchId>		[0..1]		36

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element([camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/SettlementPlace](#)) is removed.

## 4.102.10 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary agent related to the underlying transaction.

The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ProprietaryAgent2" on page 121 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.222	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		121
2.223	Agent	<Agt>		[1..1]		122

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedAgents/Proprietary) is removed.

## 4.103 TransactionDates2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the dates related to the underlying individual transaction.

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬜ Ignored - ⬜ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.267	AcceptanceDateTime	<AcceptncDtTm>		[0..1]		176
2.268	TradeActivityContractualSettlement-Date	<TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>		[0..1]		177
2.269	TradeDate	<TradDt>		[0..1]		177
2.270	InterbankSettlementDate	<IntrBkSttlmDt>		[0..1]		177
2.271	StartDate	<StartDt>		[0..1]		177
2.272	EndDate	<EndDt>		[0..1]		177
2.273	TransactionDateTime	<TxDtTm>		[0..1]		177
2.274	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..*]		178

Used in element(s)

"RelatedDates" on page 80

### 4.103.1 AcceptanceDateTime

*XML Tag:* AcceptncDtTm



*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point in time when the payment order from the initiating party meets the processing conditions of the account servicing agent. This means that the account servicing agent has received the payment order and has applied checks such as authorisation, availability of funds.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 233

## 4.103.2 TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate

*XML Tag:* TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies when an amount of money should have contractually been credited or debited the account versus when the amount of money was actually settled (debited/credited) on the cash account.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.103.3 TradeDate

*XML Tag:* TradDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the trade was executed.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.103.4 InterbankSettlementDate

*XML Tag:* IntrBkSttlmDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.103.5 StartDate

*XML Tag:* StartDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.103.6 EndDate

*XML Tag:* EndDt

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 233

## 4.103.7 TransactionDateTime

*XML Tag:* TxDtTm

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 233](#)

## 4.103.8 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary date related to the underlying transaction.

The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype ["ProprietaryDate2" on page 123](#) for details)

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ❖ Ignored - ❖ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.275	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		124
2.276	Date	<Dt>		[1..1]		124

## 4.104 TransactionInterest2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide transaction specific interest information that applies to the underlying transaction.

❌ Removed - ❌ Partial Removed - ❖ Ignored - ❖ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
M Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.123 , 2.187	Amount	<Amt>		[1..1]		178
2.124 , 2.188	CreditDebitIndicator	<CdtDbtInd>		[1..1]		179
2.125 , 2.189	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		179
2.128 , 2.192	Rate	<Rate>		[0..*]		179
2.133 , 2.197	FromDate	<FrToDt>		[0..1]		180
2.134 , 2.198	Reason	<Rsn>		[0..1]		180

**Used in element(s)**

["Interest" on page 77](#), ["Interest" on page 144](#)

### 4.104.1 Amount

*XML Tag:* Amt

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of interest included in the entry amount.

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

## 4.104.2 CreditDebitIndicator

*XML Tag:* CdtDbtInd

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the interest amount included in the entry is credit or debit amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 216







## 4.104.3 Type

*XML Tag:* Tp

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

The **Tp** block contains the following elements (see datatype "InterestType1Choice" on page 101 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.14 , 2.126 , 2.190	Code	<Cd>	{Or	[1..1]		101
2.15 , 2.127 , 2.191	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..1]		101







## 4.104.4 Rate

*XML Tag:* Rate

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

The **Rate** block contains the following elements (see datatype "Rate3" on page 128 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.17 , 2.129 , 2.193	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		128

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.20 , 2.132 , 2.196	ValidityRange	<VldtyRg>		[0..1]		129







## 4.104.5 FromToDate

XML Tag: FrToDt

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

The **FrToDt** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[DateTimePeriodDetails](#)" on page 68 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
5.1.0	FromDateTime	<FrDtTm>		[1..1]		69
5.1.1	ToDateTime	<ToDtTm>		[1..1]		69

## 4.104.6 Reason

XML Tag: Rsn







Presence: [0..1]


Definition: Specifies the reason for the interest.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 237

## 4.105 TransactionParty2

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the parties specific to the individual transaction.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.200	InitiatingParty	<InitgPty>		[0..1]		181
2.201	Debtor	<Dbtr>		[0..1]		181
2.202	DebtorAccount	<DbtrAcct>		[0..1]		182
2.203	UltimateDebtor	<UltmtDbtr>		[0..1]		182
2.204	Creditor	<Cdtr>		[0..1]		183
2.205	CreditorAccount	<CdtrAcct>		[0..1]		183

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.206	UltimateCreditor	<UltmtCdtr>		[0..1]		184
2.207	TradingParty	<TradgPty>		[0..1]	🚫	184
2.208	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..*]	🚫	185

Used in element(s)

"RelatedParties" on page 77

## 4.105.1 InitiatingParty

XML Tag: InitgPty

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiated the payment that is reported in the entry.

The **InitgPty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PartyIdentification32" on page 110 for details)

🚫 Removed - 🚫 Partial Removed - ⬡ Ignored - ⬡ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/InitiatingParty) is removed.







## 4.105.2 Debtor




XML Tag: Dbtr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

The **Dbtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PartyIdentification32" on page 110 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114







### 4.105.3 DebtorAccount




*XML Tag:* DbtrAcct

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor.

The **DbtrAcct** block contains the following elements (see datatype "CashAccount16" on page 39 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		39
1.1.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		40
1.1.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]		41
1.1.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		41







### 4.105.4 UltimateDebtor

*XML Tag:* UltmtDbtr

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

The **UltmtDbtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "PartyIdentification32" on page 110 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below -  
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]	⊘	111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]	⊘	113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]	⊘	113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]	⊘	114

## 4.105.5 Creditor

XML Tag: Cdtr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party to which an amount of money is due.

The **Cdtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]	<b>M</b>	110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]	⊘	113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]	⊘	113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]	⊘	114

## 4.105.6 CreditorAccount





XML Tag: CdtrAcct

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry has been posted as a result of the payment transaction.

The **CdtrAcct** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[CashAccount16](#)" on page 39 for details)

⊘ Removed - ⊘ Partial Removed - ◇ Ignored - ◇ Partial Ignored - ⚠ Details below -  
**M** Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
1.1.0	Identification	<Id>		[1..1]		39
1.1.8	Type	<Tp>		[0..1]		40
1.1.11	Currency	<Ccy>		[0..1]		41
1.1.12	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		41







## 4.105.7 UltimateCreditor






XML Tag: UltmtCdtr

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

The **UltmtCdtr** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -   
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114







## 4.105.8 TradingParty

XML Tag: TradgPty

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that plays an active role in planning and executing the transactions that create or liquidate investments of the investors assets, or that move the investor's assets from one investment to another. A trading party is a trade instructor, an investment decision-maker, a post trade administrator, or a trader. In the context of treasury, it is the party that negotiates and executes the treasury transaction.

The **TradgPty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "[PartyIdentification32](#)" on page 110 for details)

 Removed -  Partial Removed -  Ignored -  Partial Ignored -  Details below -   
 Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]



Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
9.1.0 , 1.2.14	Name	<Nm>		[0..1]		110
9.1.1 , 1.2.15	PostalAddress	<PstlAdr>		[0..1]		111
9.1.12 , 1.2.26	Identification	<Id>		[0..1]		113
9.1.33 , 1.2.47	CountryOfResidence	<CtryOfRes>		[0..1]		113
9.1.34 , 1.2.48	ContactDetails	<CtctDtls>		[0..1]		114

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/TradingParty) is removed.







## 4.105.9 Proprietary

*XML Tag:* Prtry

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary party related to the underlying transaction.

The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ProprietaryParty2" on page 124 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]







Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.209	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		125
2.210	Party	<Pty>		[1..1]		125

#### Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RelatedParties/Proprietary) is removed.

## 4.106 TransactionPrice2Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the price information related to the underlying transaction.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.278	DealPrice	<DealPric>	{Or	[1..1]		186
2.279	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or}	[1..*]		186

Used in element(s)

"RelatedPrice" on page 81

## 4.106.1 DealPrice

XML Tag: DealPric

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the price of the traded financial instrument.

This is the deal price of the individual trade transaction.

If there is only one trade transaction for the execution of the trade, then the deal price could equal the executed trade price (unless, for example, the price includes commissions or rounding, or some other factor has been applied to the deal price or the executed trade price, or both).

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193







## 4.106.2 Proprietary

XML Tag: Prtry

Presence: [1..\*]

Definition: Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.







The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ProprietaryPrice2" on page 125 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.280	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		126
2.281	Price	<Pric>		[1..1]		126

## 4.107 TransactionQuantities1Choice

Definition: Specifies the quantities (eg of securities) in the underlying transaction.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.283	Quantity	<Qty>	{Or	[1..1]		187

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.284	Proprietary	<Prtry>	Or	[1..1]		187

Used in element(s)

"RelatedQuantities" on page 81







## 4.107.1 Quantity

XML Tag: Qty

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the quantity (eg of securities) in the underlying transaction.

The **Qty** block contains the following elements (see datatype "FinancialInstrumentQuantityChoice" on page 89 for details)

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
12.1.0	Unit	<Unit>	{Or	[1..1]		90
12.1.1	FaceAmount	<FaceAmt>	Or	[1..1]		90
12.1.2	AmortisedValue	<AmtsdVal>	Or	[1..1]		90







## 4.107.2 Proprietary

XML Tag: Prtry

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary quantities specification defined in the underlying transaction.







The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ProprietaryQuantity1" on page 126 for details)











 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.285	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		126
2.286	Quantity	<Qty>		[1..1]		126

## 4.108 TransactionReferences2

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the underlying transaction.

 Removed - 
  Partial Removed - 
  Ignored - 
  Partial Ignored - 
  Details below - 
  Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.144	MessageIdentification	<MsgId>		[0..1]		188
2.145	AccountServicerReference	<AcctSvcrRef>		[0..1]	 	188
2.146	PaymentInformationIdentification	<PmtInfId>		[0..1]		189
2.147	InstructionIdentification	<InstrId>		[0..1]		189
2.148	EndToEndIdentification	<EndToEndId>		[0..1]	 	190
2.149	TransactionIdentification	<TxId>		[0..1]		190
2.150	MandateIdentification	<MndtId>		[0..1]		191
2.151	ChequeNumber	<ChqNb>		[0..1]		191
2.152	ClearingSystemReference	<ClrSysRef>		[0..1]		191
2.153	Proprietary	<Prtry>		[0..1]		192

**Used in element(s)**

"References" on page 73

## 4.108.1 MessageIdentification

*XML Tag:* MsgId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

**Usage Guideline details**

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/MessageIdentification

- **HSBC\_MessageIdentification:**

Message Identification is a Point to point reference assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.  
 Message Identification will be reported for itemised debits only.

## 4.108.2 AccountServicerReference

*XML Tag:* AcctSvcrRef

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/AccountServicerReference**

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/AccountServicerReference**

- **HSBC\_AccountServicerReference:**

If the reference is not present 'NOT PROVIDED' will be reported

## 4.108.3 PaymentInformationIdentification

XML Tag: PmtInfId

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

## Usage Guideline details

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/PaymentInformationIdentification**

- **HSBC\_PaymentInformationIdentification:**

For countries supporting the de-batch functionality.

Countries where the de-batch functionality is not supported this field will not be reported.

**If**

countries support de-batch functionality

**Then**

Payment Information Identification will be reported

**Else**

PaymentInformationIdentification will not be reported

## 4.108.4 InstructionIdentification

XML Tag: InstrId

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing party and the instructed party to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

**Usage Guideline details**

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/InstructionIdentification**

- **HSBC\_InstructionIdentification:**

Instruction ID supported for PAIN.001 V2. Instruction ID will be supported for PAIN.001 V3 in June 2013.

## 4.108.5 EndToEndIdentification

*XML Tag:* EndToEndId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the transaction. This identification is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Usage:* The end-to-end identification can be used for reconciliation or to link tasks relating to the transaction. It can be included in several messages related to the transaction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 237

**Usage Guideline details**

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/EndToEndIdentification**

*This element is now mandatory, the minimum occurrence has been changed to : 1*

- on **camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/EndToEndIdentification**

- **HSBC\_EndToEndIdentification:**

End To End Identification is the original reference provided by the customers for the batch or individual transactions.

If the End To End Identification is not provided by the customer, 'NOT PROVIDED' will be populated

## 4.108.6 TransactionIdentification

*XML Tag:* TxId

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction that is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire interbank chain.

*Usage:* The transaction identification can be used for reconciliation, tracking or to link tasks relating to the transaction on the interbank level.

Usage: The instructing agent has to make sure that the transaction identification is unique for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.108.7 MandateIdentification

XML Tag: MndtId

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

## 4.108.8 ChequeNumber

XML Tag: ChqNb

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identifier for a cheque as assigned by the agent.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/ChequeNumber

- HSBC\_ChequeNumber:

Cheque Number will be used only for cheques and will be supplied only if available

## 4.108.9 ClearingSystemReference

XML Tag: ClrSysRef

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Usage: In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 237

### Usage Guideline details

- on camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/ClearingSystemReference

- HSBC\_ClearingSystemReference:

Clearing System Reference will only be used and supplied if available

# 4.108.10    Proprietary

XML Tag: Prtry

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Proprietary reference related to the underlying transaction.

The **Prtry** block contains the following elements (see datatype "ProprietaryReference1" on page 126 for details)

Removed - Partial Removed - Ignored - Partial Ignored - Details below - Mandatory - R[x..x] Repeatability[details]

Index	Message Item	<XML Tag>	Or	Mult.	Usage Guidelines	Page
2.154	Type	<Tp>		[1..1]		127
2.155	Reference	<Ref>		[1..1]		127

## Usage Guideline details

- This element(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/References/Proprietary) is removed.



## 5 Message Datatypes

**Note** The following chapter identifies the datatypes that are used in the message.

### 5.1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type must be used with the following XML Attributes:

Attribute	Tag	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

#### Format

fractionDigits	5
minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18

#### Rules

##### R8 CurrencyAmount ✓

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

#### Used in element(s)

"Amount" on page 59, "Amount" on page 49, "Amount" on page 47, "Amount" on page 22, "Amount" on page 24, "Amount" on page 156, "Amount" on page 52, "Amount" on page 178, "Amount" on page 69, "Amount" on page 165, "Amount" on page 138, "CreditNoteAmount" on page 133, "DealPrice" on page 186, "DiscountAppliedAmount" on page 133, "DuePayableAmount" on page 132, "Price" on page 126, "RemittedAmount" on page 134, "TaxAmount" on page 133, "TaxableBaseAmount" on page 154, "TotalAmount" on page 35, "TotalAmount" on page 154, "TotalChargesAndTaxAmount" on page 52, "TotalTaxAmount" on page 158, "TotalTaxableBaseAmount" on page 158

### 5.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{3,3}

#### Rules

##### R4 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- Error severity: Fatal
- Error Code: D00006
- Error Text: Invalid currency code.

#### Used in element(s)

"Currency" on page 64, "Currency" on page 41, "Currency" on page 43, "SourceCurrency" on page 65, "TargetCurrency" on page 65, "UnitCurrency" on page 65

#### Used in attribute(s)

"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 193

#### Restricts

"ParentCurrencyCode" on page 240

## 5.3 AddressType2Code

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.

#### Used in element(s)

"AddressType" on page 118

**Restricts**

["AddressTypeCode" on page 195](#)

## 5.4 AddressTypeCode

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.

**Is restricted by**

["AddressType2Code" on page 194](#)

## 5.5 AmountDirectionCode

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease or the result of a reversal operation.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.
RVCD	ReversalCredit	Debit entry used to reverse a previously booked credit entry.
RVDB	ReversalDebit	Credit entry used to reverse a previously booked debit entry.

**Is restricted by**

["CreditDebitCode" on page 216](#)

## 5.6 AnyBICIdentifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{6,6}[A-Z2-9][A-NP-Z0-9]([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

**Rules****R3 AnyBIC ✓**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00008
- *Error Text:* Invalid BIC.

**Used in element(s)**

"BICOrBEI" on page 107

## 5.7 BICIdentifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{6,6}[A-Z2-9][A-NP-Z0-9]([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

**Rules****R5 BIC ✓**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00001
- *Error Text:* Invalid BIC Code

**Used in element(s)**

"BIC" on page 86

## 5.8 BalanceType12Code

*Definition:* Specifies the balance type.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CLAV	ClosingAvailable	Closing balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
CLBD	ClosingBooked	Balance of the account at the end of the pre-agreed account reporting period. It is the sum of the opening booked balance at the beginning of the period and all entries booked to the account during the pre-agreed account reporting period.
FWAV	ForwardAvailable	<p>Forward available balance of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/ForwardAvailable) is removed.</li> </ul>
INFO	Information	<p>Balance for informational purposes.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/Information) is removed.</li> </ul>
ITAV	InterimAvailable	<p>Available balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/InterimAvailable) is removed.</li> </ul>
ITBD	InterimBooked	Balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the ba-

Code	Name	Definition
		<p>sis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/InterimBooked) is removed.</li> </ul>
OPAV	OpeningAvailable	Opening balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
OPBD	OpeningBooked	Book balance of the account at the beginning of the account reporting period. It always equals the closing book balance from the previous report.
PRCD	PreviouslyClosedBooked	<p>Balance of the account at the previously closed account reporting period. The opening booked balance for the new period has to be equal to this balance.</p> <p>Usage: the previously booked closing balance should equal (inclusive date) the booked closing balance of the date it references and equal the actual booked opening balance of the current date.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/PreviouslyClosedBooked) is removed.</li> </ul>
XPCD	Expected	<p>Balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects the end of day balance if everything is booked on the account and no other entry is posted.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Balance/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/Expected) is removed.</li> </ul>

Used in element(s)

"Code" on page 28

**Restricts**

["BalanceTypeCode" on page 199](#)

## 5.9 BalanceTypeCode

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of the balance.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
ADJT	Adjustment	Balance to be held in the settlement account in order to comply with the average reserve due, in the event that the bank's balance is equal to the reserve due during the remaining days of the maintenance period.
ADWR	AvailableDMVForDiscountWindowRepo	Balance represents the available discounted market value for discount window repo.
AIDR	AvailableDMVForIntradayRepo	Balance represents the available discounted market value for intraday repo.
AMOH	AmountOnHold	Amount put on hold.
AMTD	AmountDue	Amount of money due.
AMTO	AmountOwing	Amount of money owed
AVLB	Available	Balance of money or securities that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
BLCK	Blocked	Balance representing the regulatory reserve that a financial institution must have with the account servicing institution, eg, the minimum credit balance a financial institution is to keep with its Central Bank for mandatory reserve purposes. In some countries, a blocked balance is known as a 'reserve' balance.
BLOC	BlockedTrades	<p>Balance representing the projected total of all cash legs for trades settling via CSD that have been matched but blocked in order to not settle. These blocked trades are included in the calculation for settlement (eg, to avoid overdrafts).</p> <p>Usage rule: Blocking can be done by account owner or its counterparties. Usually this is done to chain transactions or to prioritise other trades. Blocked trades have an indicator that prevents the transactions from settling. Once matched, they can settle whenever the freeze is lifted. In this case they will move to FSET. Lifting the freeze can happen anytime during the day and the transaction will be settling in the next settlement cycle which can be the same day if the</p>

Code	Name	Definition
		(I)CSD's operates several settlements cycles per day.
BOOK	Book	Balance that is registered in the books of the account servicer.
BORR	Borrowings	Balance attributed to borrowings.
BSCC	BulkSettlementCMUPCredit	Balance represents the total of the bulk settlement and central moneymarkets unit processor credit.
BSCD	BulkSettlementCMUPDebit	Balance represents the total of the bulk settlement and central moneymarkets unit processor debit.
CASE	CashAndCashEquivalents	Balance attributed to cash and cash equivalents.
CCLA	CollectionClosingAvailable	Collection closing balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
CCLB	CollectionClosingBooked	Collection balance of the account at the end of the pre-agreed account reporting period. It is the sum of the opening booked balance at the beginning of the period and all entries booked to the account during the pre-agreed account reporting period.
CCPS	CentralCounterparty	Balance representing the forecast of the total of all cash legs of transactions traded in exchanges that operate a central counterparty functionality.
CFWA	CollectionForwardAvailable	Collection forward available balance of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
CITA	CollectionInterimAvailable	Collection available balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
CITB	CollectionInterimBooked	Collection balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
CLAV	ClosingAvailable	Closing balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
CLBD	ClosingBooked	Balance of the account at the end of the pre-agreed account reporting period. It is the sum of the opening booked balance at the beginning of the period and all en-



Code	Name	Definition
		tries booked to the account during the pre-agreed account reporting period.
CLRI	ClearedItem	Cleared items balance.
CLSG	Closing	Balance of the account at the end of the account servicer's business day. It is the sum of the opening balance at the beginning of the day and all entries booked to the account during the account servicer's business day.
COHB	CreditOnHold	Balance representing the total incoming payments that were put on hold because the credit limit has been exceeded.
COLC	DividendsCollection	Balance representing the projected total amount of all payment obligations to the participant (bank), based on their role as main paying agent.
COPA	CollectionOpeningAvailable	Collection opening balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
COPB	CollectionOpeningBooked	Collection book balance of the account at the beginning of the account reporting period. It always equals the closing book balance from the previous report.
CPBL	CreditProcessed	Balance representing the total incoming payments that have been processed and are waiting for settlement.
CRDL	CreditLine	Credit line available.
CRDT	Credit	Balance representing the sum of all credit entries booked to an account.
CRRT	Current	Balance of the account at a precise moment in time.
CUSA	CustodyActual	Balance representing the actual total of all asset servicing transactions such as dividends, income corporate actions equivalents, tax returns, redemptions, etc.
CUST	Custody	Balance representing the projected total of all asset servicing transactions such as dividends, income corporate actions equivalents, tax returns, etc.
CXPC	CollectionExpected	Collection balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects the end of day balance if everything is booked on the account and no other entry is posted.
DBIT	Debit	Balance representing the sum of all debit entries booked to an account.
DCLA	DisbursementClosingAvailable	Disbursement closing balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.

Code	Name	Definition
DCLB	DisbursementClosingBooked	Disbursement balance of the account at the end of the pre-agreed account reporting period. It is the sum of the opening booked balance at the beginning of the period and all entries booked to the account during the pre-agreed account reporting period.
DFWA	DisbursementForwardAvailable	Disbursement forward available balance of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
DITA	DisbursementInterimAvailable	Disbursement available balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
DITB	DisbursementInterimBooked	Disbursement balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
DLOD	DaylightOverdraft	Balance representing the intra day overdraft granted by the Central Bank to financial institutions participating in a RTGS system. This balance may vary over time and shall be offset at the end of the day.
DOHB	DebitOnHold	Balance representing the total outgoing payments that were put on hold because the debit limit has been exceeded.
DOPA	DisbursementOpeningAvailable	Disbursement opening balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
DOPB	DisbursementOpeningBooked	Disbursement book balance of the account at the beginning of the account reporting period. It always equals the closing book balance from the previous report.
DPBL	DebitProcessed	Balance representing the total outgoing payments that have been processed and are waiting for settlement.
DSET	DefinitiveSettledSecurities	Balance representing the cash equivalent of all settled securities transactions.
DWRD	DiscountWindowRepoDrawings	Balance represents the discount window repo drawings.
DXPC	DisbursementExpected	Disbursement balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects the end of day balance if everything is

Code	Name	Definition
		booked on the account and no other entry is posted.
EAST	EligibleAssets	Balance representing the potential loan a Central Bank would make in cash if the collateral is pledged, eg, securities available and eligible as collateral with the Central Bank.
ELEC	Elected	Balance of instructed position.
EXPN	Expenses	Balance attributed to expenses.
FCOL	FirmCollateralisation	Balance representing the forecast of the cash-equivalent resulting from evaluation of existing holdings at CSD that are qualified to serve as collateral.
FCOU	UsedAmountsFirmCollateralisation	Balance representing the cash equivalent resulting from evaluation of existing holdings at CSD that are qualified to serve as collateral and have been used as collateral.
FORC	CashForecast	Balance representing the total of all balance types representing transactions to settle, blocked items and custody transactions.
FSET	ForecastSettlement	Balance representing the forecast of total of all cash legs for trades that are ready to settle via CSD. Amounts shown are still subject to processing of the securities settlement.
FUND	NetFunding	Balance representing the net amount to be funded resulting from all transactions which have an impact on the funding requirement.
FUTB	TotalFuture	Balance representing the total of the payments with a processing date in the future.
FWAV	ForwardAvailable	Forward available balance of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
ICLA	InvestmentClosingAvailable	Investment closing balance of an amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
ICLB	InvestmentClosingBooked	Investment (mutual funds) balance of the account at the end of the pre-agreed account reporting period. It is the sum of the opening booked balance at the beginning of the period and all entries booked to the account during the pre-agreed account reporting period.
IFWA	InvestmentForwardAvailable	Investment forward available balance of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
IIOF	InvestorInflowOutflow	Balance attributed to investor inflow/outflow (creations, cancellations, income distributions).

Code	Name	Definition
IITA	InvestmentInterimAvailable	Investment available balance for calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
IITB	InvestmentInterimBooked	Investment balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
INFO	Information	Balance for informational purposes.
INTM	Interim	Balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
INVE	Investments	Balance attributed to investments at value.
IOPA	InvestmentOpeningAvailable	Investment opening balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
IOPB	InvestmentOpeningBooked	Investment book balance of the account at the beginning of the account reporting period. It always equals the closing book balance from the previous report.
IRDR	IntradayRepoDrawings	Balance represents the intraday repo drawings.
IRLT	IntradayRepoLimit	Balance represents the intraday repo limit.
ITAV	InterimAvailable	Available balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
ITBD	InterimBooked	Balance calculated in the course of the account servicer's business day, at the time specified, and subject to further changes during the business day. The interim balance is calculated on the basis of booked credit and debit items during the calculation time/period specified.
IXPC	InvestmentExpected	Investment balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects

Code	Name	Definition
		the end of day balance if everything is booked on the account and no other entry is posted.
LACK	LackOfHoldingsTransactions	Balance representing the cash equivalent of transactions with a lack of holdings.
LDGR	Ledger	Ledger balance refers to posted transactions (e.g. limit authorisation amount - posted transactions).
LRLD	LimitRelated	Balance of a specific limit value, eg, a bilateral balance is calculated in relation to a given bilateral limit.
LTSF	LiquidityTransfer	Balance composed of the sum of all liquidity transfers made to or from an account.
MSTR	Master	Balance of the identified account plus the balance of all of its subaccounts.
NOTE	Noted	Balance representing the amount that a financial institution has set aside for a specific reason and which is therefore not available.
NSET	NonSettledSecurities	Balance representing the cash equivalent of all non-settled securities transactions.
OPAV	OpeningAvailable	Opening balance of amount of money that is at the disposal of the account owner on the date specified.
OPBD	OpeningBooked	Book balance of the account at the beginning of the account reporting period. It always equals the closing book balance from the previous report.
OPNG	Opening	Book balance of the account at the beginning of the account servicer's business day. It always equals the closing book balance from the previous business day. Note: the available balance at the beginning of the account servicer's business day may be different from the closing book balance from the previous business day.
OTCC	CCPGuaranteedOTCTransactions	Balance representing the Forecast of the total of all cash-legs of transactions 'over the counter' (OTC), going through CCP functions.
OTCG	ForecastOTCTransactions	Balance representing the forecast of the total of all cash legs of transactions traded 'over the counter' (OTC).
OTCN	NonCCPGuaranteedOTCTransactions	Balance representing the forecast of the total of all cash legs of transactions traded 'over the counter' (OTC) not going through CCP functions.
OTHB	OtherBlockedTrades	Balance representing the projected total of all cash legs for trades settling

Code	Name	Definition
		via CSD that have been matched but blocked in order to not settle. These blocked transactions are not included in the calculation for settlement.
OTHN	OtherNational	Other type of balance defined at national level
OTHP	OtherPrivate	Other type of balance defined at private level.
OTHR	Other	Balance attributed according to a different classification, which is not explicitly defined.
PAYA	Payables	Balance attributed to payables.
PDNG	Pending	Balance of securities pending delivery, eg, orders to sell securities have been executed but settlement of the open transactions has not been confirmed.
PIPO	PayInPayOut	Balance representing the fictive forecast of automated direct debits or payment based on standing arrangements between the CSD and the user.  Usage: Pay-Ins and Pay-Outs can be different based on individual payment instructions or available funds.
PRAV	ProgressiveAverage	Average of the daily balances on the account used to fulfil the reserve requirements calculated from the beginning of the maintenance period.
PRCD	PreviouslyClosedBooked	Balance of the account at the previously closed account reporting period. The opening booked balance for the new period has to be equal to this balance.  Usage: the previously booked closing balance should equal (inclusive date) the booked closing balance of the date it references and equal the actual booked opening balance of the current date.
PYMT	Payment	Balance representing the sum of entries as a result of payments processing. Entries relating to fees, interest, or other movements not a result of payments sent or received by the account owner are not included.
RDIS	ReservedForDistribution	Balance of financial instruments that are reserved for the distribution of the proceeds.
RECE	Receivables	Balance attributed to receivables.
REJB	TotalRejected	Balance representing the total of the payments that have been rejected.
REPC	CMUPRepoCredit	Balance represents the total of the central moneymarkets unit processor repo credits.

Code	Name	Definition
REPD	CMUPRepoDebit	Balance represents the total of the central moneymarkets unit processor repo debits.
REST	Restricted	<p>Balance of cash that may only be used under certain conditions.</p> <p>Balance type is used to block securities/cash in the client account e.g., in relation to elections relating to certain corporate actions. The holding is under the direct control of the system paying agent, who is the only one who can transfer securities out of this balance type.</p> <p>Also known as the "escrow balance" or "sequestered balance".</p>
REVE	Revenues	Balance attributed to revenues; including dividends, interest, net realised gains/losses etc.
RREM	ReservedForRemoval	Balance of securities which are reserved temporarily in the SPA account before they will effectively be exchanged.
SAPC	SAPDirectCreditAmount	Balance represents the settlement account processor direct credit amount.
SAPD	SAPDirectDebitAmount	Balance represents the settlement account processor direct debit amount.
SAPP	SAPQueueAmount	Balance represents the settlement account processor queue amount.
SCOL	SelfCollateralisation	Balance representing the forecast of the cash-equivalent resulting from evaluation of the net incoming balance of securities qualified to serve as collateral for which settlement instructions are held at.
SCOU	UsedAmountsSelfCollateralisation	Balance representing the cash-equivalent resulting from evaluation of incoming securities, qualified to serve as collateral and actually used as collateral, which have been settled during the settlement process.
SELF	Self	Balance of the account identified (as opposed to Master Balance).
TENT	TotalEntitled	Total quantity of financial instruments entitled to the account owner based on the terms of the corporate action event.
THRE	Threshold	Balance representing the amount that will be destined for investment. Difference between available balance and threshold for investment limit.
TOHB	TotalOnHold	Balance representing the total of the payments that were put on hold because the limits have been exceeded.

Code	Name	Definition
TPBL	TotalProcessed	Balance representing the total of the payments that have been processed and are waiting for settlement during the day.
UNEL	Unelected	Balance of uninstructed position.
XCHC	CCPGuaranteedForecasting	Balance representing the forecast of the total of all cash legs of transactions in exchanges, going through CCP functions.
XCHG	ExchangeForecast	Balance representing the forecast of the total of all cash legs of transactions traded in exchanges.
XCHN	NonCCPGuaranteedForecasting	Balance representing the forecast of the total of all cash legs of transactions traded in exchanges not going through CCP functions.
XCRD	ExpectedCredit	Balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects the end of day credit balance if everything books to the account and no other credit entry is posted.
XDBT	ExpectedDebit	Balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects the end of day debit balance if everything books to the account and no other debit entry is posted.
XPCD	Expected	Balance, composed of booked entries and pending items known at the time of calculation, which projects the end of day balance if everything is booked on the account and no other entry is posted.

Is restricted by

"BalanceType12Code" on page 196

## 5.10 BaseOneRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a decimal, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

*Type:* Rate

### Format

fractionDigits	10
totalDigits	11

### Used in element(s)

"ExchangeRate" on page 65



## 5.11 CashAccountType4Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CACC	Current	Account used to post debits and credits when no specific account has been nominated.
CASH	CashPayment	Account used for the payment of cash.
CHAR	Charges	Account used for charges if different from the account for payment.
CISH	CashIncome	Account used for payment of income if different from the current cash account.
COMM	Commission	Account used for commission if different from the account for payment.
LOAN	Loan	Account used for loans.
MGLD	MarginalLending	Account used for a marginal lending facility.
MOMA	MoneyMarket	Account used for money markets if different from the cash account.
NREX	NonResidentExternal	Account used for non-resident external.
ODFT	Overdraft	Account is used for overdrafts.
ONDP	OverNightDeposit	Account used for overnight deposits.
SACC	Settlement	Account used to post debit and credit entries, as a result of transactions cleared and settled through a specific clearing and settlement system.
SLRY	Salary	Accounts used for salary payments.
SVGS	Savings	Account used for savings.
TAXE	Tax	Account used for taxes if different from the account for payment.
TRAS	CashTrading	Account used for trading if different from the current cash account.

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 45

**Restricts**

"CashAccountTypeCode" on page 209

## 5.12 CashAccountTypeCode

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CACC	Current	Account used to post debits and credits when no specific account has been nominated.
CASH	CashPayment	Account used for the payment of cash.
CHAR	Charges	Account used for charges if different from the account for payment.
CISH	CashIncome	Account used for payment of income if different from the current cash account.
COLL	Collateral	Account is for collateral.
COMM	Commission	Account used for commission if different from the account for payment.
LEND	Lending	Account is for the coverage of lending.
LOAN	Loan	Account used for loans.
MARR	MarginReturn	Account is for margin returns.
MGLD	MarginalLending	Account used for a marginal lending facility.
MOMA	MoneyMarket	Account used for money markets if different from the cash account.
NREX	NonResidentExternal	Account used for non-resident external.
ODFT	Overdraft	Account is used for overdrafts.
ONDP	OverNightDeposit	Account used for overnight deposits.
SACC	Settlement	Account used to post debit and credit entries, as a result of transactions cleared and settled through a specific clearing and settlement system.
SEGT	Segregated	Account is an segregated account.
SETT	FinancialSettlement	Account is for financial settlements.
SLRY	Salary	Accounts used for salary payments.
SVGS	Savings	Account used for savings.
TAXE	Tax	Account used for taxes if different from the account for payment.
TRAS	CashTrading	Account used for trading if different from the current cash account.

**Is restricted by**

"CashAccountType4Code" on page 209

## 5.13 ChargeBearerType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

**Used in element(s)**

"Bearer" on page 53

**Restricts**

"ChargeBearerTypeCode" on page 211

## 5.14 ChargeBearerTypeCode

*Definition:* Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

**Is restricted by**

"ChargeBearerType1Code" on page 210

## 5.15 ChargeType1Code

*Definition:* Type of service for which a charge is asked or paid.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
BRKF	BrokerageFee	Fee paid to a broker for services provided.
COMM	Commission	Fee paid for services provided.

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 51

**Restricts**

"ChargeTypeCode" on page 212

## 5.16 ChargeTypeCode

*Definition:* Type of service for which a charge is asked or paid.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
ACCT	AccountingFee	Fee paid for accounting services rendered.
ADRF	ADRFee	Charge linked to an ADR (American Depositary Receipt).
ADVI	AdvisoryFee	Fee paid for advisory services rendered.
AIRF	AirWayBillFee	Charge is an airway bill fee.
BEND	BackEndLoad	Sales charge paid by the investor when redeeming an investment such as an investment fund.
BRKF	BrokerageFee	Fee paid to a broker for services provided.
CBCH	CorrespondentBankCharge	In investment funds, the charge of the correspondent bank for transferring money.
CDSC	ContingencyDeferredSalesCharge	Deferred sales charge.
CHAR	ServiceProvisionFee	Fee paid for the provision of financial services.
CHDE	ClearanceAndHandlingAtDestination	Charge is for clearance and handling of goods at destination.
CHOR	ClearanceAndHandlingAtOrigin	Charge is for clearance and handling of goods at origin.
COLF	CollectFreight	Charge is for the collection of the freight.
COMM	Commission	Fee paid for services provided.

Code	Name	Definition
CUST	CustodyFee	Fee paid to a custodian in respect of custodial services.
DISC	Discount	Charge that has been reduced from the standard initial charge levied by a fund, eg, during a launch period or as negotiated by a funds supermarket / discount broker.
DLEV	DilutionLevy	In investment funds, a charge payable by the investor covering bid-offer spreads and dealing charges for the underlying investments. The dilution levy is paid to the fund for the benefit of other unit holders.
DNGR	DangerousGoodsFee	Charge is for dangerous goods.
EQUL	Equalisation	The part of an investor's subscription amount that is held by the fund in order to pay incentive or performance fees at the end of the fiscal year.
FEND	FrontEndLoad	Sales charge paid immediately by the investor when subscribing to an investment such as an investment fund.
INIT	Initial	Charge paid at the time of the first subscription.
INSU	InsurancePremium	Charge is a premium for insurance.
ISSC	IssuanceCancellationFee	Fee linked to the cancellation of an issuance.
ISSU	IssuanceFee	Charge linked to the issuance of security.
MACO	MatchingFees	Fee charged for matching and/or confirmation.
MANF	ManagementFee	Fee paid to an investment manager for services. The fee usually includes fund administration costs and investor relationship management. Typically, the amount paid is a percentage of the assets under management.
MISC	MiscellaneousFee	Miscellaneous fee.
OTHR	Other	Another type of charge.
PACK	Packaging	Charge is for packaging of goods.
PACQ	PartAcquis	Portion of charge that the fund is entitled to receive, that cannot be reduced by an intermediary.
PENA	Penalty	Fee charged to the investor for early redemption of the fund.
PICK	PickUp	Charge is for pick-up of goods.
POST	PostageCharge	Charge paid for the postage.

Code	Name	Definition
PREM	Premium	In investment funds, pre-arranged addition to the trade amount based on the published net asset value.
PUBL	PublicationFee	Fee paid in respect of publications made.
REGF	RegulatoryFee	Fee charged by a regulatory authority, eg, Securities and Exchange fees.
SECU	SecurityCharge	Charge is for security.
SFEN	SpeciallyAgreedFrontEndLoad	Specially agreed front-end load.
SHIP	ShippingCharge	Charge for shipping, including the insurance of securities.
SIGN	SignatureService	Charge is for signature services.
SPCN	SpecialConcessions	Charges, drawdown, or other reduction from or in addition to the deal price.
STDE	StorageAtDestination	Charge is for storage of goods at destination.
STOR	StorageAtOrigin	Charge is for storage of goods at origin.
SWIT	Switch	In investment funds, charge related to a switch transaction.
TRAN	TransferFee	In investment funds, a fee charged for the transfer of ownership of an investment fund.
TRPT	TransportCharges	Charge is for transport.
UCIC	UCITSCommission	Charges paid by the investor to the Fund Company for subscription and redemption orders.

Is restricted by

"ChargeType1Code" on page 212

## 5.17 CopyDuplicate1Code

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

**Used in element(s)**

["CopyDuplicateIndicator" on page 13](#)

**Restricts**

["CopyDuplicateCode" on page 215](#)

## 5.18 CopyDuplicateCode

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

**Is restricted by**

["CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 214](#)

## 5.19 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

**Rules****R1 Country ✓**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00004
- *Error Text:* Invalid Country Code.

**Used in element(s)**

["Country" on page 121](#), ["CountryOfBirth" on page 67](#), ["CountryOfResidence" on page 113](#)

## 5.20 CreditDebitCode

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**Used in element(s)**

["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 63](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 106](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 49](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 47](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 169](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 53](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 179](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 35](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 69](#), ["CreditDebitIndicator" on page 138](#)

**Restricts**

["AmountDirectionCode" on page 195](#)

## 5.21 DecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

fractionDigits	17
totalDigits	18

**Used in element(s)**

["Sum" on page 106](#), ["Sum" on page 105](#), ["Sum" on page 169](#), ["TotalNetEntryAmount" on page 106](#), ["TotalNetEntryAmount" on page 169](#), ["Unit" on page 90](#)

## 5.22 DocumentType3Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.



Code	Name	Definition
		<p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/DispatchAdvice) is removed.</li> </ul>
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	<p>Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/ForeignExchangeDealReference) is removed.</li> </ul>
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	<p>Document is a purchase order.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/PurchaseOrder) is removed.</li> </ul>
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	<p>Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOr-</li> </ul>

Code	Name	Definition
		<b>Proprietary/Code/RemittanceAdviceMessage) is removed.</b>
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	<p>Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/EntryDetails/TransactionDetails/RemittanceInformation/Structured/CreditorReferenceInformation/Type/CodeOrProprietary/Code/RelatedPaymentInstruction) is removed.</li> </ul>
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 61

**Restricts**

"DocumentTypeCode" on page 219

## 5.23 DocumentType5Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
ARO	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.

Code	Name	Definition
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
HIRE	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 131

**Restricts**

"DocumentTypeCode" on page 219

## 5.24 DocumentTypeCode

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CRCP	CustomerReceipt	When the Sale System requires the POI system to print the Customer receipt.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.

Code	Name	Definition
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
HRCP	CashierReceipt	When the Sale system print the Cashier copy of the Payment receipt.
JNRL	Journal	When the POI or the Sale System wants to store a message on the journal printer or electronic journal of the Sale Terminal (it is sometimes a Sale Logging/Journal Printer).
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
SRCP	SaleReceipt	When the Sale System requires the POI system to print the Sale receipt.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.

Is restricted by

"DocumentType3Code" on page 216, "DocumentType5Code" on page 218

## 5.25 EntryStatus2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an entry.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
BOOK	Booked	<p>Booked means that the transfer of money has been completed between account servicer and account owner</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>Status Booked does not necessarily imply finality of money as this depends on other factors such as the payment system used, the completion of the end-to-end transaction and the terms agreed between account servicer and owner.</p> <p>Status Booked is the only status that can be reversed.</p>
INFO	Information	<p>Entry is only provided for information, and no booking on the account owner's account in the account servicer's ledger has been performed.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/Status/Information) is removed.</li> </ul>
PDNG	Pending	<p>Booking on the account owner's account in the account servicer's ledger has not been completed.</p> <p>Usage: this can be used for expected items, or for items for which some conditions still need to be fulfilled before they can be booked. If booking takes place, the entry will be included with status Booked in subsequent account report or statement. Status Pending cannot be reversed.</p> <p><b>Usage Guideline restrictions for this code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This code(camt.053.001.02/Statement/Entry/Status/Pending) is removed.</li> </ul>

**Used in element(s)**

"Status" on page 138

**Restricts**

"EntryStatusCode" on page 222

## 5.26 EntryStatusCode

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an entry.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
BOOK	Booked	<p>Booked means that the transfer of money has been completed between account servicer and account owner</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>Status Booked does not necessarily imply finality of money as this depends on other factors such as the payment system used, the completion of the end-to-end transaction and the terms agreed between account servicer and owner.</p> <p>Status Booked is the only status that can be reversed.</p>
FUTR	Future	<p>Entry is on the books of the account servicer and value will be applied to the account owner at a future date and time.</p>
INFO	Information	<p>Entry is only provided for information, and no booking on the account owner's account in the account servicer's ledger has been performed.</p>
PDNG	Pending	<p>Booking on the account owner's account in the account servicer's ledger has not been completed.</p> <p>Usage: this can be used for expected items, or for items for which some conditions still need to be fulfilled before they can be booked. If booking takes place, the entry will be included with status Booked in subsequent account report or statement. Status Pending cannot be reversed.</p>

**Is restricted by**

"EntryStatus2Code" on page 220

## 5.27 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 11

**Restricts**

"ExternalAccountIdentificationCode" on page 223

## 5.28 ExternalAccountIdentificationCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Is restricted by**

"ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 222

## 5.29 ExternalBalanceSubType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 26

**Restricts**

"ExternalBalanceSubTypeCode" on page 224

## 5.30 ExternalBalanceSubTypeCode

*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Is restricted by

"ExternalBalanceSubType1Code" on page 223

## 5.31 ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code domain, as published in an external bank transaction code domain code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"Code" on page 31

### Restricts

"ExternalBankTransactionDomainCode" on page 224

## 5.32 ExternalBankTransactionDomainCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external domain code of the bank transaction code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1



**Is restricted by**

"ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code" on page 224

## 5.33 ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code family, as published in an external bank transaction code family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 32

**Restricts**

"ExternalBankTransactionFamilyCode" on page 225

## 5.34 ExternalBankTransactionFamilyCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external family code of the bank transaction code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately, and is a sub-list of the bank transaction domain list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Is restricted by**

"ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code" on page 225

## 5.35 ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code sub-family, as published in an external bank transaction code sub-family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"SubFamilyCode" on page 32

**Restricts**

"ExternalBankTransactionSubFamilyCode" on page 226

## 5.36 ExternalBankTransactionSubFamilyCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external sub-family code of the bank transaction code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately, and is a sub-list of the bank transaction family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Is restricted by**

"ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code" on page 225

## 5.37 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	5
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 55

**Restricts**

"ExternalClearingSystemIdentificationCode" on page 227

## 5.38 ExternalClearingSystemIdentificationCode

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	5
minLength	1

### Is restricted by

"ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 226

## 5.39 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"Code" on page 85

### Restricts

"ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentificationCode" on page 227

## 5.40 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentificationCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Is restricted by**

"ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 227

## 5.41 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 108

**Restricts**

"ExternalOrganisationIdentificationCode" on page 228

## 5.42 ExternalOrganisationIdentificationCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Is restricted by**

"ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 228

## 5.43 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"Code" on page 116

### Restricts

"ExternalPersonIdentificationCode" on page 229

## 5.44 ExternalPersonIdentificationCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Is restricted by

"ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 229

## 5.45 ExternalPurpose1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 127

**Restricts**

"ExternalPurposeCode" on page 230

## 5.46 ExternalPurposeCode

*Definition:* Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Is restricted by**

"ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 229

## 5.47 ExternalReportingSource1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

maxLength	4
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 146

**Restricts**

"ExternalReportingSourceCode" on page 231

## 5.48 ExternalReportingSourceCode

*Definition:* Specifies the reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Is restricted by

"ExternalReportingSource1Code" on page 230

## 5.49 ExternalReturnReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the return reason, as published in an external return reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"Code" on page 146

### Restricts

"ExternalReturnReasonCode" on page 231

## 5.50 ExternalReturnReasonCode

*Definition:* Specifies the return reason, as published in an external return reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Is restricted by

"ExternalReturnReason1Code" on page 231

## 5.51 ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"Code" on page 165

### Restricts

"ExternalTechnicalInputChannelCode" on page 232

## 5.52 ExternalTechnicalInputChannelCode

*Definition:* Specifies the technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Is restricted by

"ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 232

## 5.53 IBAN2007Identifier

*Definition:* The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

### Format

pattern	[A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}
---------	---------------------------------------



**Rules****R2 IBAN ✓**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00003
- *Error Text:* Invalid IBAN format or invalid check digits.

**Used in element(s)**

"IBAN" on page 8

## 5.54 ISINIdentifier

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{12,12}

**Used in element(s)**

"ISIN" on page 150

## 5.55 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

**Used in element(s)**

"ActualDate" on page 50, "BirthDate" on page 67, "Date" on page 66, "Date" on page 158, "EndDate" on page 177, "FromDate" on page 68, "InterbankSettlementDate" on page 177, "RelatedDate" on page 130, "StartDate" on page 177, "ToDate" on page 68, "TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate" on page 177, "TradeDate" on page 177, "Year" on page 161

## 5.56 ISODateTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:m-

m:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

**Used in element(s)**

"AcceptanceDateTime" on page 176, "CreationDateTime" on page 97, "CreationDateTime" on page 13, "DateTime" on page 66, "FromDateTime" on page 69, "QuotationDate" on page 66, "ToDateTime" on page 69, "TransactionDateTime" on page 177

## 5.57 ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is implied by the context and compliant with ISO 4217. The decimal separator is a dot.

Note: a zero amount is considered a positive amount.

*Type:* Amount

**Format**

fractionDigits	5
minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18

**Used in element(s)**

"AmortisedValue" on page 90, "BoundaryAmount" on page 26, "EqualAmount" on page 101, "FaceAmount" on page 90, "NotEqualAmount" on page 101

## 5.58 InterestCode

*Definition:* Indicates which type of interest is applied to a balance left on an account.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.

Code	Name	Definition
OVN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

**Is restricted by**

"InterestType1Code" on page 235

## 5.59 InterestType1Code

*Definition:* Indicates which type of interest is applied to a balance left on an account.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

**Used in element(s)**

"Code" on page 101

**Restricts**

"InterestCode" on page 234

## 5.60 Max105Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

maxLength	105
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

"AdditionalInformation" on page 149

## 5.61 Max140Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

maxLength	140
-----------	-----

minLength	1
-----------	---

**Used in element(s)**

["AdditionalInformation" on page 70](#), ["AdditionalInformation" on page 164](#), ["AdditionalRemittanceInformation" on page 153](#), ["Name" on page 37](#), ["Name" on page 57](#), ["Name" on page 110](#), ["Name" on page 87](#), ["Name" on page 103](#), ["Name" on page 155](#), ["ReferenceNumber" on page 157](#), ["Unstructured" on page 134](#)

## 5.62 Max15NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}
---------	-------------

**Used in element(s)**

["NumberOfEntries" on page 106](#), ["NumberOfEntries" on page 105](#), ["NumberOfEntries" on page 169](#), ["NumberOfTransactions" on page 34](#)

## 5.63 Max15PlusSignedNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits and may be prefixed with a plus sign.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[+]{0,1}[0-9]{1,15}
---------	---------------------

**Used in element(s)**

["NumberOfDays" on page 50](#)

## 5.64 Max16Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

maxLength	16
minLength	1

**Used in element(s)**

["BuildingNumber" on page 119](#), ["PostCode" on page 120](#)

## 5.65 Max2048Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

maxLength	2048
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"EmailAddress" on page 58, "RemittanceLocationElectronicAddress" on page 136

## 5.66 Max34Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

maxLength	34
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"Identification" on page 92

## 5.67 Max35Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

maxLength	35
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

"AccountServicerReference" on page 188, "AccountServicerReference" on page 140, "AdministrationZone" on page 157, "Category" on page 162, "CategoryDetails" on page 163, "CertificateIdentification" on page 163, "ChequeNumber" on page 191, "CityOfBirth" on page 67, "ClearingSystemReference" on page 191, "Code" on page 122, "Code" on page 58, "ContractIdentification" on page 65, "CountrySubDivision" on page 120, "DebtorStatus" on page 163, "EndToEndIdentification" on page 190, "EntryReference" on page 137, "FormsCode" on page 163, "Identification" on page 94, "Identification" on page 93, "Identification" on page 37, "Identification" on page 95, "Identification" on page 96, "Identification" on page 18, "Identification" on page 155, "Identification" on page 12, "InstructionIdentification" on page 189, "Issuer" on page 95, "Issuer" on page 94, "Issuer" on page 93, "Issuer" on page 96, "Issuer" on page 97, "Issuer" on page 123, "Issuer" on page 132, "Issuer" on page 62, "MandateIdentification" on page 191, "MemberIdentification" on page 56, "MessageIdentification" on

[page 102](#), ["MessageIdentification" on page 97](#), ["MessageIdentification" on page 33](#), ["MessageIdentification" on page 188](#), ["MessageNameIdentification" on page 102](#), ["Method" on page 157](#), ["Number" on page 59](#), ["Number" on page 130](#), ["Other" on page 58](#), ["Other" on page 129](#), ["PaymentInformationIdentification" on page 34](#), ["PaymentInformationIdentification" on page 189](#), ["Proprietary" on page 55](#), ["Proprietary" on page 85](#), ["Proprietary" on page 11](#), ["Proprietary" on page 45](#), ["Proprietary" on page 108](#), ["Proprietary" on page 116](#), ["Proprietary" on page 101](#), ["Proprietary" on page 59](#), ["Proprietary" on page 146](#), ["Proprietary" on page 28](#), ["Proprietary" on page 26](#), ["Proprietary" on page 166](#), ["Proprietary" on page 128](#), ["Proprietary" on page 131](#), ["Proprietary" on page 61](#), ["Proprietary" on page 147](#), ["ProvinceOfBirth" on page 67](#), ["Quantity" on page 126](#), ["Reason" on page 10](#), ["Reason" on page 180](#), ["Reference" on page 127](#), ["Reference" on page 60](#), ["RegistrationIdentification" on page 159](#), ["RegistrationIdentification" on page 160](#), ["RemittanceIdentification" on page 136](#), ["TaxIdentification" on page 159](#), ["TaxIdentification" on page 160](#), ["TaxType" on page 159](#), ["TaxType" on page 160](#), ["Title" on page 155](#), ["TownName" on page 120](#), ["TransactionIdentification" on page 190](#), ["Type" on page 127](#), ["Type" on page 126](#), ["Type" on page 18](#), ["Type" on page 24](#), ["Type" on page 125](#), ["Type" on page 121](#), ["Type" on page 124](#), ["Type" on page 126](#), ["Type" on page 162](#)

## 5.68 Max4Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

maxLength	4
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

["Reason" on page 70](#)

## 5.69 Max500Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 500 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

maxLength	500
minLength	1

### Used in element(s)

["AdditionalEntryInformation" on page 145](#), ["AdditionalInformation" on page 99](#), ["AdditionalStatementInformation" on page 17](#), ["AdditionalTransactionInformation" on page 84](#)

## 5.70 Max5NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 5 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{1,5}

**Used in element(s)**

"PageNumber" on page 108

## 5.71 Max70Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

maxLength 70

minLength 1

**Used in element(s)**

"AddressLine" on page 121, "Department" on page 118, "Name" on page 41, "Name" on page 43, "StreetName" on page 119, "SubDepartment" on page 119

## 5.72 NamePrefix1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.

**Used in element(s)**

"NamePrefix" on page 57

**Restricts**

"NamePrefixCode" on page 239

## 5.73 NamePrefixCode

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.

Code	Name	Definition
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.

**Is restricted by**

"NamePrefix1Code" on page 239

## 5.74 Number

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as an integer.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

fractionDigits	0
totalDigits	18

**Used in element(s)**

"ElectronicSequenceNumber" on page 12, "LegalSequenceNumber" on page 12, "SequenceNumber" on page 158

## 5.75 ParentCurrencyCode

*Definition:* Code allocated to a currency, by a maintenance agency, under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds". Valid currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, and consist of three contiguous letters.

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

**Is restricted by**

"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 193

## 5.76 PercentageRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

*Type:* Rate



**Format**

fractionDigits	10
totalDigits	11

**Used in element(s)**

["Percentage" on page 129](#), ["Rate" on page 155](#), ["Rate" on page 53](#), ["Rate" on page 153](#)

## 5.77 PhoneNumber

*Definition:* The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+ and "-" (up to 30 characters).

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}
---------	-------------------------------

**Used in element(s)**

["FaxNumber" on page 58](#), ["MobileNumber" on page 57](#), ["PhoneNumber" on page 57](#)

## 5.78 RemittanceLocationMethod2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

Code	Name	Definition
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.

**Used in element(s)**

["RemittanceLocationMethod" on page 136](#)

**Restricts**

["RemittanceLocationMethodCode" on page 242](#)

## 5.79 RemittanceLocationMethodCode

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.

**Is restricted by**

["RemittanceLocationMethod2Code" on page 241](#)

## 5.80 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.

Used in element(s)

["Type" on page 161](#)

Restricts

["TaxRecordPeriodCode" on page 243](#)

## 5.81 TaxRecordPeriodCode

*Definition:* Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

*Type:* CodeSet

Code	Name	Definition
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.

**Is restricted by**

"TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 242

## 5.82 TrueFalseIndicator

*Definition:* A flag indicating a True or False value.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* True

*Meaning When False:* False

**Used in element(s)**

"ForecastIndicator" on page 169, "Included" on page 59, "ReversalIndicator" on page 138

## 5.83 YesNoIndicator

*Definition:* Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Yes

*Meaning When False:* No

**Used in element(s)**

"CommissionWaiverIndicator" on page 141, "Included" on page 26, "LastPageIndicator" on page 109

# Legal Notices

## Copyright

SWIFT © 2022. All rights reserved.

This material is a component of MyStandards, the SWIFT collaborative Web application used to manage standards definitions and industry usage. It can only be used and distributed in accordance with MyStandards Terms of Use.

Unless otherwise agreed in writing with SWIFT SCRL, you have no right to:

- authorise external end users to use this component for other purposes than their internal use.
- remove, alter, cover, obfuscate or cancel from view any copyright or other proprietary rights notices appearing in this physical medium.
- re-sell or authorise another party e.g. software and service providers, to re-sell this component.

## Confidentiality

This publication may contain SWIFT or third-party confidential information. Only disclose it outside your organisation in accordance with MyStandards Terms of Use and your related license rights.

This component is provided 'AS IS'. SWIFT does not give and excludes any express or implied warranties with respect to this component such as but not limited to any guarantee as to its quality, supply or availability.

Any and all rights, including title, ownership rights, copyright, trademark, patents, and any other intellectual property rights of whatever nature in this component will remain the exclusive property of SWIFT or its licensors.

## Trademarks and Patents

SWIFT is the trade name of S.W.I.F.T. SCRL. The following are registered trademarks of SWIFT: SWIFT, the SWIFT logo, 3SKey, Innotribe, Sibos, SWIFTNet, MyStandards, SWIFTReady, and Accord. Other product, service, or company names in this publication are trade names, trademarks, or registered trademarks of their respective owners.